

10/052824

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau

#2

## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : A61K 31/40, 31/565		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 99/59581
			(43) International Publication Date: 25 November 1999 (25.11.99)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US99/10217 (22) International Filing Date: 11 May 1999 (11.05.99) (30) Priority Data: 09/079,561 15 May 1998 (15.05.98) US (71) Applicant: AMERICAN HOME PRODUCTS CORPORATION [US/US]; Five Giralda Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US). (72) Inventors: PICKAR, James, Harrison; 816 Crum Creek Road, Springfield, PA 19064 (US). KOMM, Barry, Samuel; 1506 Melrose Avenue, Havertown, PA 19083 (US). (74) Agents: ECK, Steven, R.; American Home Products Corporation, Patent Law Dept.- 2B, One Campus Drive, Parsippany, NJ 07054 (US) et al.		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  Published With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.	
(54) Title: 2-PHENYL-1-[4-(2-AMINOETHOXY)-BENZYL]-INDOLE IN COMBINATION WITH ESTROGENS			
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>(I)</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>(II)</p> </div> </div>			
(57) Abstract The present invention relates to new formulations containing one or more estrogens and 2- phenyl- 1-[4-(2-aminoethoxy)benzyl]-Indole compounds which are useful as estrogenic agents, as well as pharmaceutical compositions and methods of treatment utilizing these compounds, which have general structures (I) or (II).			

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LJ	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

- 1 -

## 5      2-PHENYL-1-[4-(2-AMINOETHOXY)-BENZYL]-INDOLE IN COMBINATION WITH ESTROGENS

10      The present invention relates to the use of new 2-Phenyl-1-[4-(2-Aminoethoxy)-Benzyl]-Indole compounds which are useful as estrogenic agents, in conjunction with estrogens, as well as pharmaceutical compositions and methods of treatment utilizing these compounds.

**Background of the Invention**

15      The use of hormone replacement therapy for bone loss prevention in postmenopausal women is well preceded. The normal protocol calls for estrogen supplementation using such formulations containing estrone, estriol, ethynyl estradiol, 17 $\beta$ -estradiol, esterified estrogens, or conjugated estrogens isolated from natural sources (i.e. Premarin<sup>®</sup> conjugated estrogens from Wyeth-Ayerst) or synthetic  
20      estrogens. In some patients, therapy may be contraindicated due to the proliferative effects of unopposed estrogens (estrogens not given in combination with progestins) have on uterine tissue. This proliferation is associated with increased risk for endometriosis and/or endometrial cancer. The effects of unopposed estrogens on breast tissue are less clear, but are of some concern. The need for estrogens which can  
25      maintain the bone sparing effect while minimizing the proliferative effects in the uterus and breast is evident. Certain nonsteroidal antiestrogens have been shown to maintain bone mass in the ovariectomized rat model as well as in human clinical trials. Tamoxifen (sold as Novadex<sup>®</sup> brand tamoxifen citrate by Zeneca Pharmaceuticals, Wilmington, Delaware), for example, is a useful palliative for the treatment of breast  
30      cancer and has been demonstrated to exert an estrogen agonist-like effect on the bone, in humans. However, it is also a partial agonist in the uterus and this is cause for some concern. Raloxifene, a benzothiophene antiestrogen, has been shown to stimulate uterine growth in the ovariectomized rat to a lesser extent than Tamoxifen while maintaining the ability to spare bone. A suitable review of tissue selective estrogens is  
35      seen in the article "Tissue-Selective Actions Of Estrogen Analogs", *Bone* Vol. 17, No. 4, October 1995, 181S-190S.

- 2 -

5       The use of indoles as estrogen antagonists has been reported by Von Angerer, Chemical Abstracts, Vol. 99, No. 7 (1983), Abstract No. 53886u. Also, see, J.Med.Chem. 1990, 33, 2635-2640; J.Med.Chem. 1987, 30, 131-136. Also see Ger. Offen., DE 3821148 A1 891228 and WO 96/03375. These prior art compounds share structural similarities with the present compounds, but are functionally different. For  
10       compounds containing a basic amine, there is no phenyl group to rigidify the side chain.

      WO A 95 17383 (Karo Bio AB) describes indole antiestrogens with long straight chains. Another related patent WO A 93 10741 describes 5-Hydroxyindoles  
15       with a broad range of side chains. WO 93/23374 (Otsuka Pharmaceuticals, Japan) describes compounds sharing structural similarities with those of the present invention, except with the structure referred to as R<sub>3</sub> in the present formulas I and II, below, is defined as thioalkyl and the reference discloses no such compounds having chains from the indole nitrogen having the same structure as the ones provided by the present  
20       invention.

      In their article *Postmenopausal Hormone replacement therapy with estrogen periodically supplemented with antiestrogen*, Am. J. Obstet. Gynecol., Vol. 140, No. 7, 1981, pp. 787-792, Kauppila et al. describe their study of postmenopausal estrogen  
25       therapy of seven-week estrogen regimens followed by 10-day treatments with the antiestrogen clomiphene citrate.

      Also, in their article *Comparison of Megestrol Acetate and Clomiphene Citrate as Supplemental Medication in Postmenopausal Oestrogen Replacement Therapy*, Arch. Gynecol. (1983) 234:49-58, Kauppila et al. describe combination therapies in  
30       postmenopausal women of estrogen with random supplementation of megestrol acetate or clomiphene citrate.

      U.S. Patent No. 4,894,373 (Young) teaches the use of antiestrogens, including  
35       clomiphene and its isomers, citrates and derivatives, in the absence of estrogen for treating menopausal symptoms and treating or preventing osteoporosis. U.S. Patent No. 5,552,401 (Cullinan et al.) describes benzothiophene compounds as useful for the treatment of various medical indications associated with post-menopausal syndrome,



- 3 -

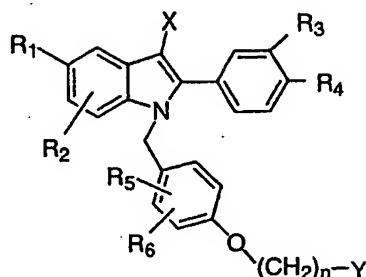
5 and uterine fibroid disease, endometriosis, and aortal smooth muscle cell proliferation, the compounds being used in pharmaceutical formulations optionally containing estrogen or progestin. U.S. Patents Nos. 5,646,137 and 5,591,753 (both issued to Black et al.) discloses methods of treating osteoporosis with formulations of raloxefine-type arylbenzothiophene compounds in conjunction with a progestin selected from  
10 medroxyprogesterone, norethindrone or norethynodrel, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. U.S. Pat. No. 5,550,107 (Labrie) claims an invention comprising the treatment of breast or endometrial cancer with an antiestrogen together with at least one compound selected from the group of an androgen, a progestin, at least one inhibitor of sex steroid formation, expecially 17 $\beta$ -hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase and aromatase  
15 activity, at least one inhibitor of prolactin secretion, one inhibitor of growth hormone secretion and one inhibitor of ACTH secretion. U.S. Pat. No. 5,672,609 (Bryant et al.) discloses pyridine compounds useful in treating post menopausal syndrome and formulations therefore containing estrogen or progestin. U.S. Pat. No. 5,534,527 (Black et al.) teaches the use of aroylbenzothiophenes and estrogens in the inhibition of  
20 bone loss.

### Description of the Invention

25 The present invention provides pharmaceutical formulations, and methods for using them, comprising compounds of formulas (I) and (II), below, in conjunction with estrogens, preferably in conjunction with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or excipients. Among the uses of the present formulations is alleviating the symptoms of post-menopausal syndrome in women, including peri-menopausal and post-menopausal symptoms. The present formulations and methods of treatment can  
30 be used to minimize undesirable side effects of estrogen treatment or therapy and may be used to minimize the amounts of estrogen(s) necessary for a particular regimen.

35 Compounds of the general structure type shown in formulas (I) and (II) are estrogen agonists/antagonists useful for the treatment of diseases associated with estrogen deficiency and are disclosed in EP-A-0802183 published 22 October 1997, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference. The compounds are capable of antagonizing the effects of 17 $\beta$ - estradiol while showing little uterine stimulation when dosed alone.

or



(I)

(II)

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> esters (straight chain or branched) or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> (straight chain or branched or cyclic) alkyl ethers thereof, or halogens; or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> halogenated ethers including trifluoromethyl ether and trichloromethyl ether.

R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> esters (straight chain or branched) or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkyl ethers (straight chain or branched or cyclic) thereof, halogens, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> halogenated ethers including trifluoromethyl ether and trichloromethyl ether, cyano, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl (straight chain or branched), or trifluoromethyl, with the proviso that, when R<sub>1</sub> is H, R<sub>2</sub> is not OH.

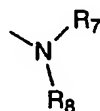
X is selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, cyano, nitro, trifluoromethyl, halogen;

**n is 2 or 3;**

**Y is selected from:**

25

a) the moiety:



wherein R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are independently selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or phenyl optionally substituted by CN, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl (straight chain or branched), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy (straight chain or branched), halogen, -OH, -CF<sub>3</sub>, or -OCF<sub>3</sub>; or R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are concatenated together as -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-, wherein p is an integer of from 2 to 6, preferably 4

- 5 -

5 to 6, the ring so formed is optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, trifluoromethyl, halogen, hydrogen, phenyl, nitro and -CN;

b) a five-membered saturated, unsaturated or partially unsaturated heterocycle containing up to two heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of -O-,  
10 -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, -N=, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN-, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>-,  
15 NHCOR<sub>1</sub>-, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, wherein R<sub>1</sub> is as defined above or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl;

c) a six-membered saturated, unsaturated or partially unsaturated heterocycle containing up to two heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of -O-,  
20 -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, -N=, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H-, -CN-, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>-, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>-, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl  
25 optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl;

d) a seven-membered saturated, unsaturated or partially unsaturated heterocycle containing up to two heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, -N=, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer  
30 of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H-, -CN, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>-, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>-, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl  
35 optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl;; or

- 6 -

- 5 e) a bicyclic heterocycle containing from 6-12 carbon atoms either bridged or fused and containing up to two heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>) alkyl;
- 10
- 15 and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The more preferred formulations of this invention are those having, along with one or more pharmaceutical carriers or excipients:

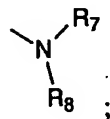
- a) one or more estrogens; and
- 20 b) one or more compounds selected from the general structures I or II, above, wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen;

- R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen, cyano, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or trihalomethyl, preferably trifluoromethyl, with the proviso that, when R<sub>1</sub> is H, R<sub>2</sub> is not OH;
- 25

X is selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, cyano, nitro, trifluoromethyl, halogen;

Y is the moiety



- R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are selected independently from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or combined by - (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-, wherein p is an integer of from 2 to 6, so as to form a ring, the ring being optionally substituted by up to three substituents selected from the group of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> dialkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NHCO(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl and -NO<sub>2</sub>;
- 30
- 35 and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

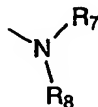
- 7 -

5

The rings formed by a concatenated R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub>, mentioned above, may include, but are not limited to, aziridine, azetidine, pyrrolidine, piperidine, hexamethylenamine or heptamethylenamine rings.

10

The most preferred compounds of the present formulations are those having the structural formulas I or II, above, wherein R<sub>1</sub> is OH; R<sub>2</sub> - R<sub>6</sub> are as defined above; X is selected from the group of Cl, NO<sub>2</sub>, CN, CF<sub>3</sub>, or CH<sub>3</sub>; and Y is the moiety



15

and R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are concatenated together as -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>, wherein r is an integer of from 4 to 6, to form a ring optionally substituted by up to three substituents selected from the group of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NHCO(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl and -NO<sub>2</sub>; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

20

In another embodiment of this invention, when R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are concatenated together as -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>, wherein p is an integer of from 2 to 6, preferably 4 to 6, the ring so formed is optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, trifluoromethyl, halogen, phenyl, nitro and -CN.

25

The invention includes sulfate, sulfamates and sulfate esters of phenolic groups. Sulfates can be readily prepared by the reaction of the free phenolic compounds with sulfur trioxide complexed with an amine such as pyridine, trimethylamine, triethylamine, etc. Sulfamates can be prepared by treating the free phenolic compound with the desired amino or alkylamino or dialkylamino sulfamyl chloride in the presence of a suitable base such as pyridine. Sulfate esters can be prepared by reaction of the free phenol with the desired alkanesulfonyl chloride in the presence of a suitable base such as pyridine. Additionally, this invention includes compounds containing

30

35

5 phosphates at the phenol as well as dialkyl phosphates. Phosphates can be prepared by reaction of the phenol with the appropriate chlorophosphate. The dialkylphosphates can be hydrolyzed to yield the free phosphates. Phosphinates are also claimed where the phenol is reacted with the desired dialkylphosphinic chloride to yield the desired dialkylphosphinate of the phenol.

10

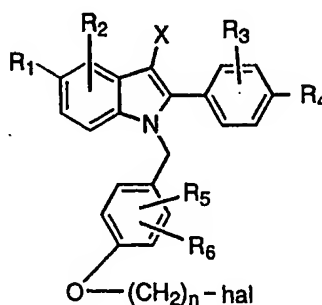
The invention includes acceptable salt forms formed from the addition reaction with either inorganic or organic acids. Inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydroiodic acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, nitric acid useful as well as organic acids such as acetic acid, propionic acid, citric acid, maleic acid, malic acid, tartaric acid, phthalic acid, succinic acid, methanesulfonic acid, toluenesulfonic acid, naphthalenesulfonic acid, camphorsulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid are useful.

15 It is known that compounds possessing a basic nitrogen can be complexed with many different acids (both protic and non-protic) and usually it is preferred to administer a compound of this invention in the form of an acid addition salt. Additionally, this

20 invention includes quaternary ammonium salts of the compounds herein. These can be prepared by reacting the nucleophilic amines of the side chain with a suitably reactive alkylating agent such as an alkyl halide or benzyl halide.

25 The compounds utilized in this invention are prepared by a process which comprises one of the following:

a) reacting a compound of formula



30

wherein n, R<sub>1</sub>-R<sub>6</sub> and X are as defined above and hal is chlorine or bromine with a compound of formula:

- 9 -

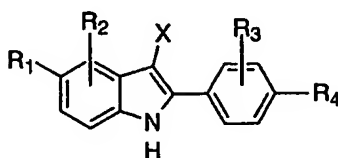
5  $\text{HNR}_7\text{R}_8$

where  $\text{R}_7$  and  $\text{R}_8$  are as defined above to give a corresponding compound of formula I or II;

or

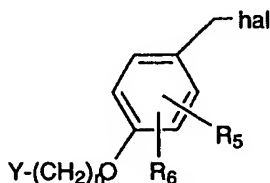
b) reacting a compound of formula

10



wherein  $\text{R}_1$ - $\text{R}_4$  and  $\text{X}$  are as defined above in the presence of a base, e.g.  $\text{NaH}$ , with a compound of formula

15



wherein  $n$ ,  $\text{R}_5$ ,  $\text{R}_6$  and  $\text{Y}$  are as defined above and  $\text{hal}$  is a halogen, e.g.  $\text{Cl}$  or  $\text{Br}$  to give a corresponding compound of Formula I ;

if necessary protecting any reactive substituent groups during each process above and removing same; and

20 if desired converting a phenolic group present to a phosphate, sulfate, sulfamate or sulfate ester; and further if desired converting the compound of formula I or II to a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

25

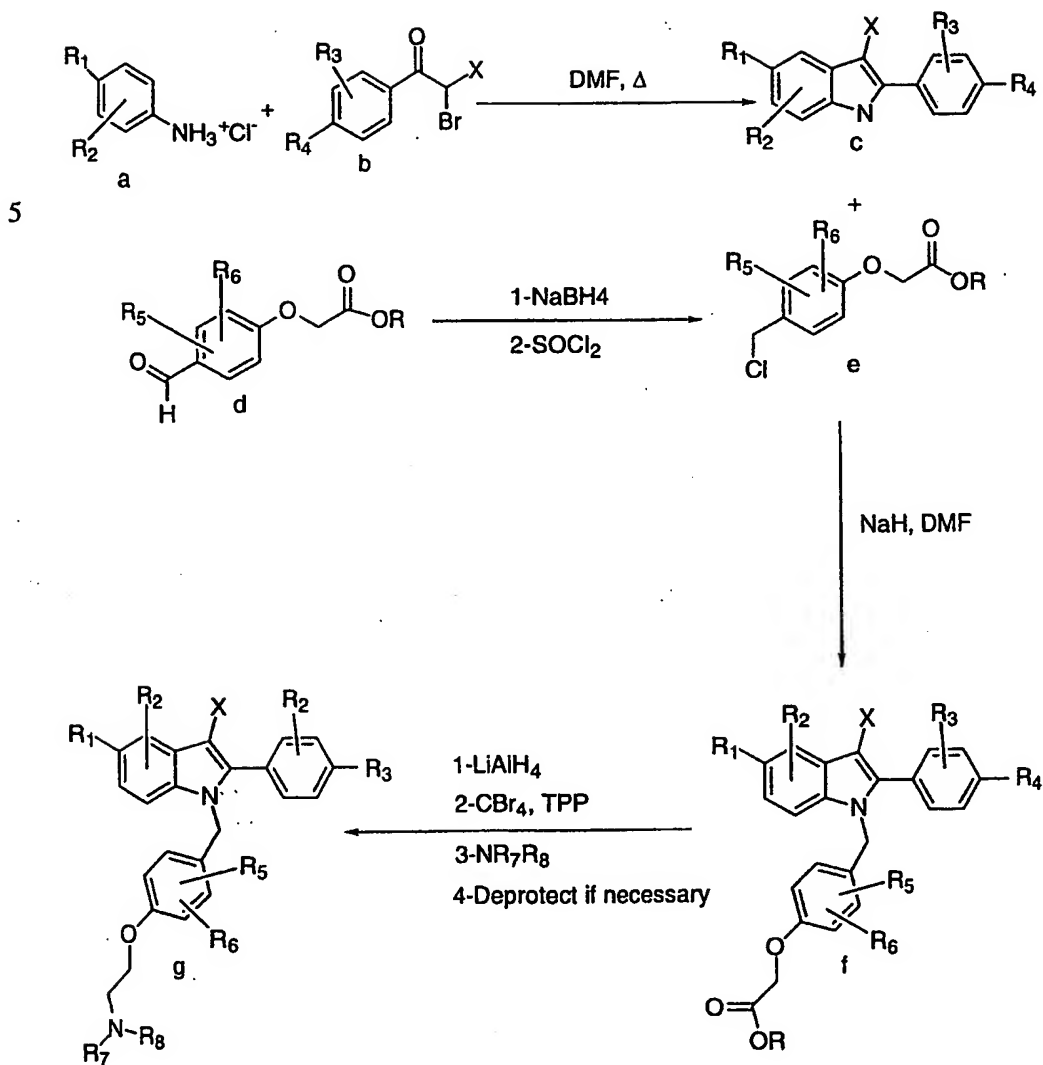
### Methods

Compounds of this invention can be synthesized in a general sense according to Scheme 1, below.

30

- 10 -

## Scheme 1



10 The initial indole synthesis is accomplished by heating an appropriately substituted alpha-bromo ketone (b) with the desired aniline (a) in DMF to form the indole (c). The product is then alkylated with a benzyl chloride (e) to give the substituted indole (f). The benzyl chloride (e) can be readily prepared from the aldehyde (d) in 2 steps as given. Product (g) can be prepared from (f) by reduction of the ester, conversion of the alcohol to a bromide, displacement of the bromide with the



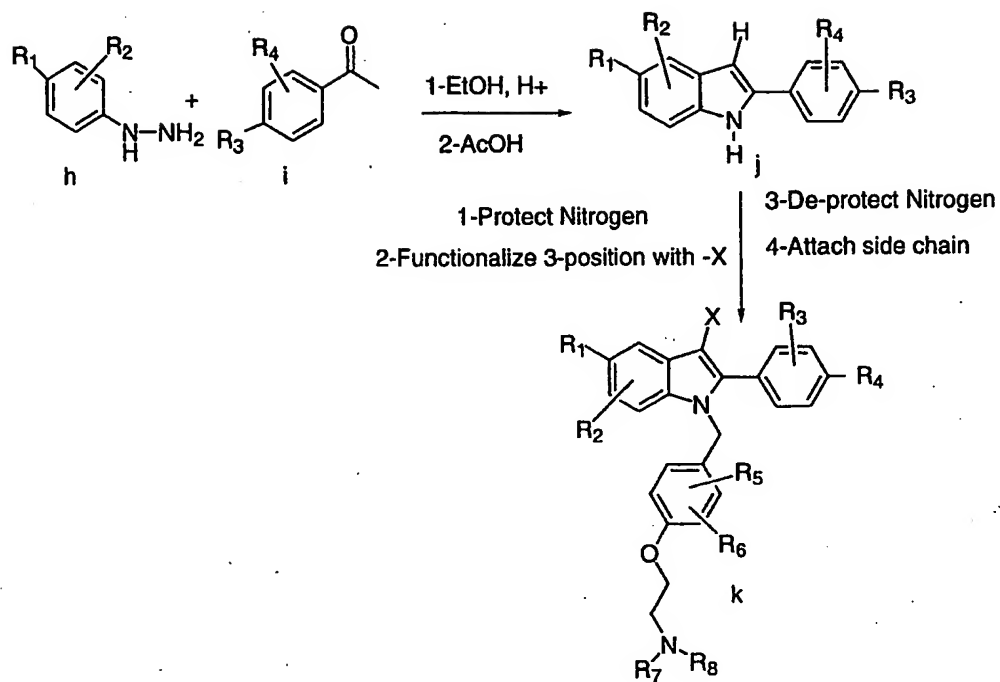
- 11 -

5    desired amine in a suitable solvent such as THF or DMF, and finally, deprotection if necessary. Deprotection is necessary when either R<sub>1</sub> or R<sub>2</sub> or both is a protected phenol. The preferred protecting group is a benzyl group which can be conveniently removed by several conventional methods, especially hydrogenolysis.

10        For the synthesis of compounds with X=H, halogen, trifluoromethyl, cyano, nitro, an alternative synthesis shown in scheme 2 may be preferable. The formation of halogens at the 3-position can be easily performed with such reagents as N-chlorosuccinamide, N-bromosuccinamide, or N-iodosuccinamide. A 3-Iodoindole compound obtained can be used as a precursor to the 3-trifluoromethyl compound by a coupling reaction utilizing a palladium catalyst and bistrifluoromethyl mercury (II).  
15    compound with a cyano group in the 3-position can be prepared by electrophilic cyanation or alternatively the 3-position can be formylated (with a formyl iminium salt, for example) then the formyl group converted to an oxime and subsequently dehydrated to a nitrile. Alternatively, the 3-cyano compound can be synthesized by reaction of the 3-unsubstituted indole with chlorosulfonylisocyanate followed by triethylamine. A  
20    compound with the nitro group in the 3-position can be prepared by treating the indole with sodium nitrite and acetic acid. One skilled in the art recognizes these routes are not limiting and other routes are also available.

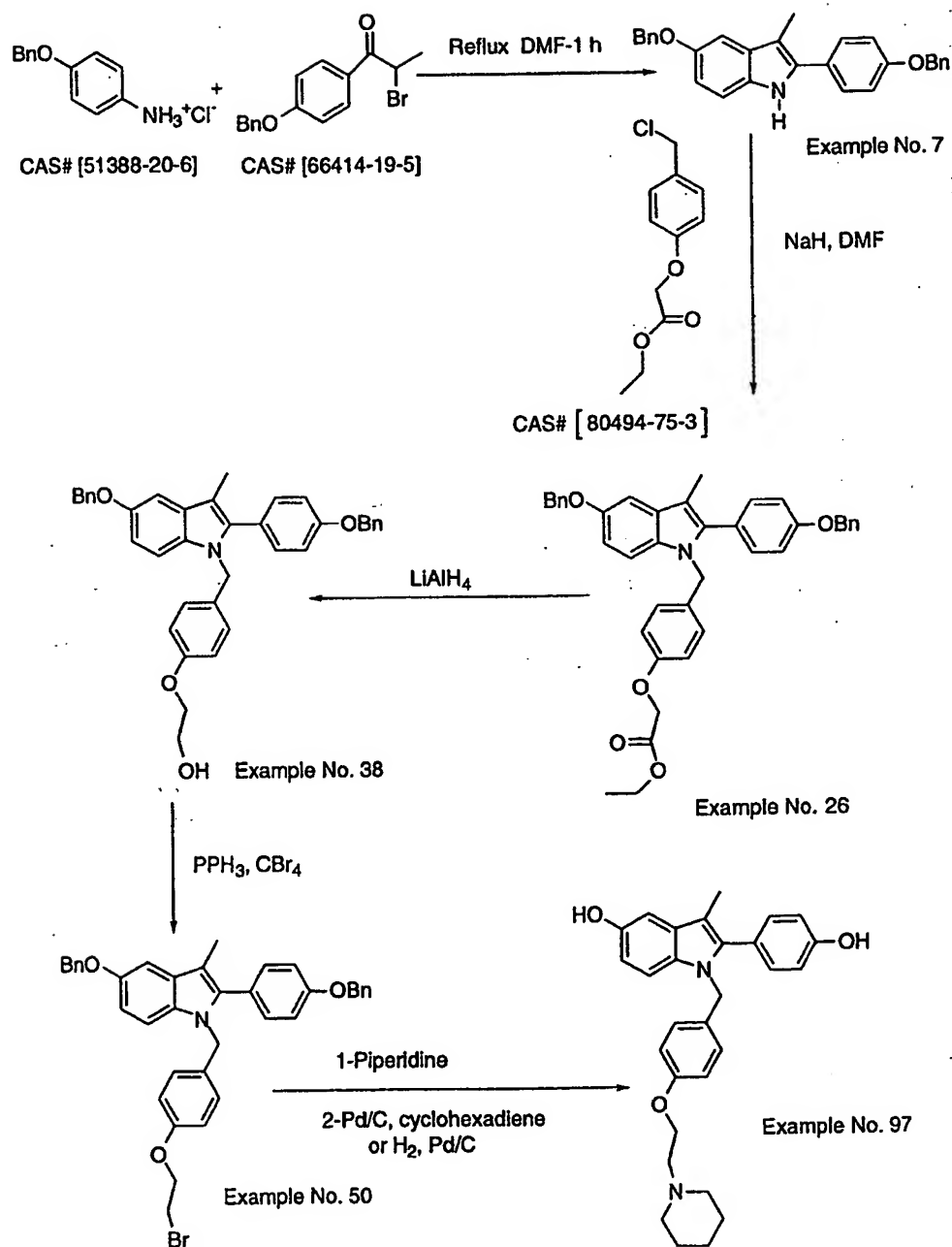
- 12 -

## 5 Scheme 2



Synthesis of selected representative examples are given in the following  
10 schemes:

## 5 Scheme 3

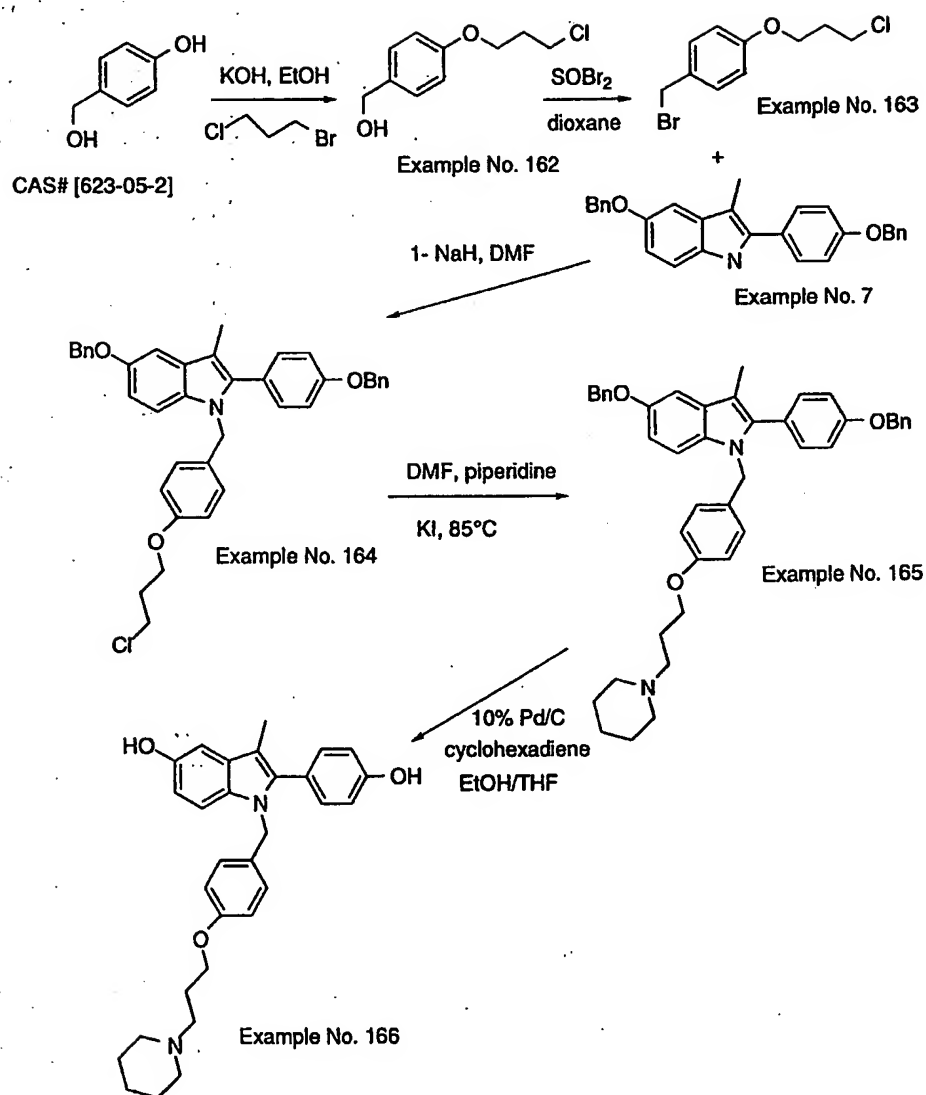


The synthesis of analogues with a 3-carbon chain (example No. 166) between the oxygen and the basic amine can be accomplished as shown in scheme 4.

- 14 -

5

## Scheme 4

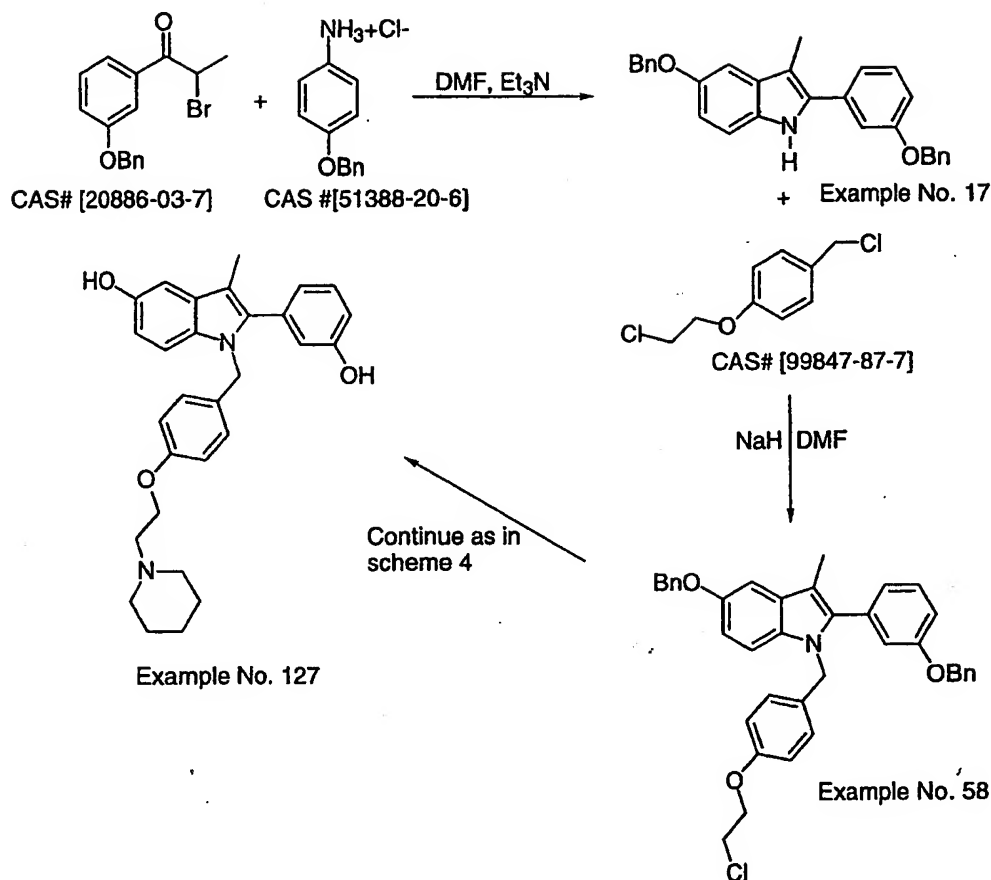


10

The synthetic procedure shown in scheme 4 may be used for compounds with two carbon chains analogous to example No. 97 in scheme 3. This is shown in scheme 4a for the synthesis of example No. 127.

- 15 -

## 5 Scheme 4a



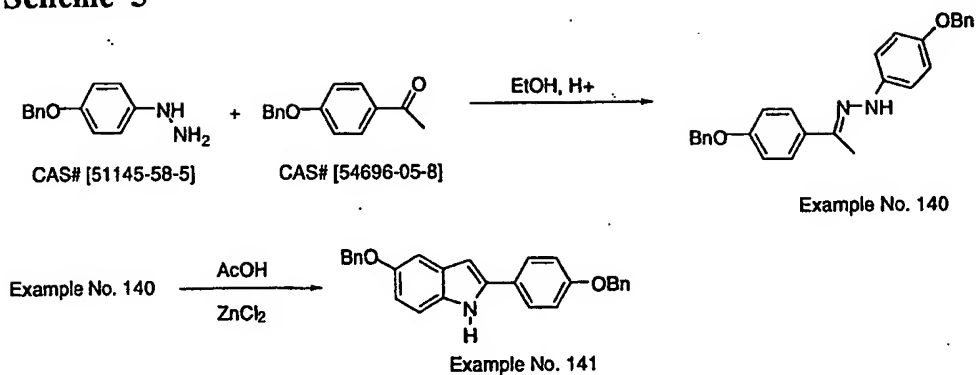
10

The synthesis of indoles with alternative substituents (CN, Cl) at the 3-position of the indole both utilize the 3-unsubstituted indole No. 141 for a precursor. The indole is synthesized by the Fisher method utilizing the hydrazone derived from the condensation of 4-benzyloxyacetophenone CAS No. [54696-05-8] and 4-benzyloxyphenylhydrazine CAS No. [51145-58-5]. The hydrazone No. 140 is then cyclized in acetic acid using zinc chloride to afford the desired indole No. 141. This synthesis can be seen in scheme 5.

15

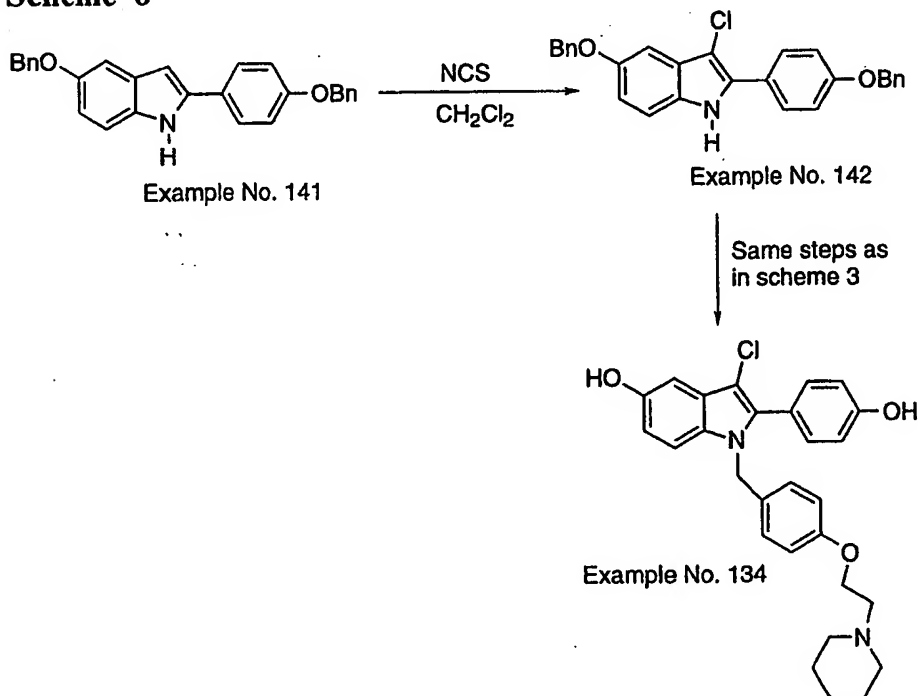
- 16 -

## 5 Scheme 5



The synthesis of 3-Chloroindole compounds is demonstrated for example No. 134 and shown, *infra*, in scheme 6. The indole No. 141 from scheme 5 is chlorinated with N-chlorosuccinamide. The 3-Chloroindole No. 142, thus obtained, is taken to the final product in analogous fashion to that shown in scheme 3.

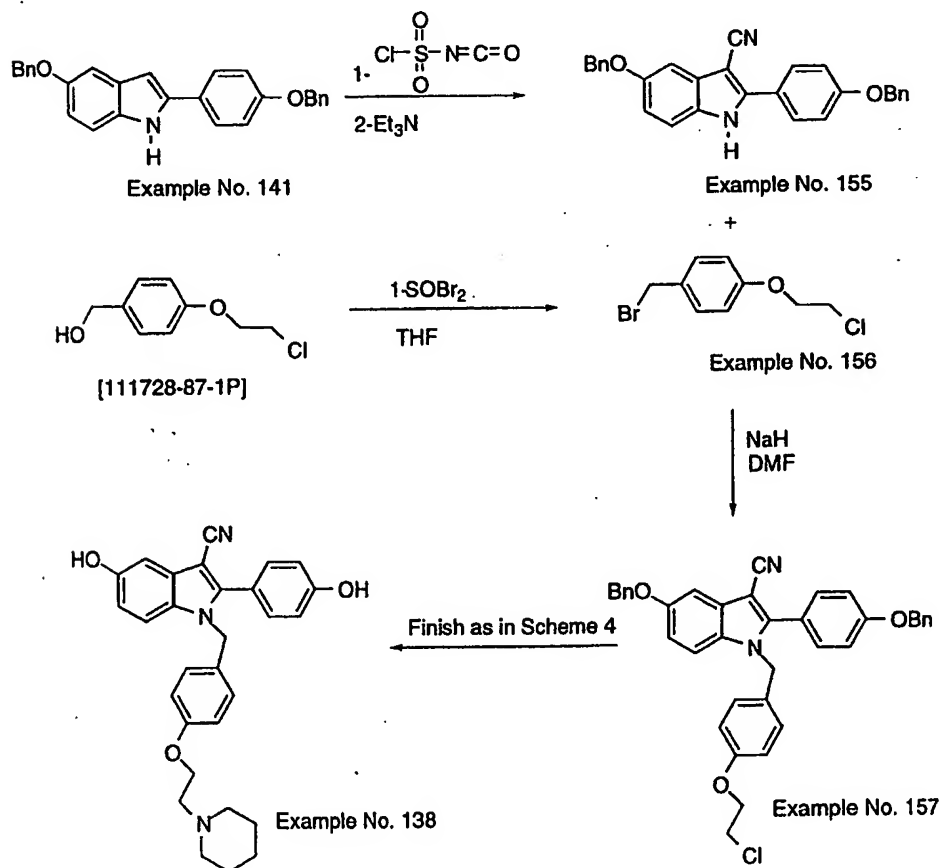
## Scheme 6



5           3-Cyano analogues are synthesized from the precursor indole No. 141 as shown in Scheme 7. Reaction of the precursor indole No. 141 with chlorosulfonyl isocyanate followed by addition of triethylamine yields the 3-Cyanoindole No. 155. The side chain is made by conversion of the benzylic alcohol of CAS No. [111728-87-1] to the benzylic bromide No. 156 using thionyl bromide in THF. The indole is  
10           alkylated by the side chain in DMF using sodium hydride to give the intermediate No. 157. This can then be taken to the final product No. 138 in an analogous fashion to that shown in scheme 4.

### Scheme 7

15



The compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) are partial estrogen agonists and display high affinity for the estrogen receptor. Unlike many estrogens, however, these

5 compounds do not cause increases in uterine wet weight. These compounds are antiestrogenic in the uterus and can completely antagonize the trophic effects of estrogen agonists in uterine tissue. These compounds are useful in treating or preventing mammal disease states or syndromes which are caused or associated with an estrogen deficiency. This tissue selectivity allows their use for desirable estrogenic  
10 activity in certain tissues, such as bone, while limiting that activity in others, such as uterine tissue.

Estrogens useful in the formulations of this invention include estrone, estriol, equilin, estradiene, equilenin, ethinyl estradiol,  $17\beta$ -estradiol,  $17\alpha$ -dihydroequilenin,  
15  $17\beta$ -dihydroequilenin (U.S. Patent 2,834,712),  $17\alpha$ -dihydroequilin,  $17\beta$ -dihydroequilin, menstranol and conjugated estrogenic hormones, such as those in Wyeth-Ayerst Laboratories' Premarin® products. Phytoestrogens, such as equol or enterolactone, may also be used in the present formulations and methods. A preferred embodiment of this invention comprises pharmaceutical compositions and methods of  
20 treatment utilizing conjugated estrogenic hormones, such as those in Wyeth-Ayerst Laboratories' Premarin® products, with one or more compounds of Formulas (I) or (III) listed herein. Esterified estrogens, such as those sold by Solvay Pharmaceuticals, Inc. under the Estratab® tradename, may also be used with the present formulations. Also preferred for use with the present invention are the salts of the applicable  
25 estrogens, most preferably the sodium salts. Examples of these preferred salts are Sodium estrone sulfate, Sodium equilin sulfate, Sodium  $17\alpha$ -dihydroequilin sulfate, Sodium  $17\alpha$ -estradiol sulfate, Sodium  $\Delta^{8,9}$ -dehydroestrone sulfate, Sodium equilenin sulfate, Sodium  $17\beta$ -dihydroequilin sulfate, Sodium  $17\alpha$ -dihydroequilenin sulfate, Sodium  $17\beta$ -estradiol sulfate, Sodium  $17\beta$ -dihydroequilenin sulfate, Estrone 3-sodium sulfate, Equilin 3-sodium sulfate,  $17\alpha$ -Dihydroequilin 3-sodium sulfate, 3 $\beta$ -Hydroxy-estra-5(10),7-dien-17-one 3-sodium sulfate, 5 $\alpha$ -Pregnan-3 $\beta$ -20R-diol 20-sodium sulfate, 5 $\alpha$ -Pregnan-3 $\beta$ ,16 $\alpha$ -diol-20-one 3-sodium sulfate,  $\Delta^{8,9}$ -Dehydroestrone 3-sodium sulfate, Estra-3 $\beta$ ,  $17\alpha$ -diol 3-sodium sulfate, 3 $\beta$ -Hydroxy-estr-5(10)-en-17-  
30 one 3-sodium sulfate or 5 $\alpha$ -Pregnan-3 $\beta$ ,16 $\alpha$ ,20R-triol 3-sodium sulfate. Preferred salts of estrone include, but are not limited to, the sodium and piperate salts.



- 19 -

5           The present compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) are tissue selective compounds having the ability to behave like estrogen agonists, such as by lowering cholesterol and preventing bone loss, or like estrogen antagonists. Therefore, these compounds in the present formulations are useful for treating many maladies including osteoporosis, prostatic hypertrophy, infertility, breast cancer, endometrial hyperplasia, endometrial  
10 cancer, endometriosis, cystic glandular hyperplasia, uterine hyperplasia, cervical hyperplasia, benign prostatic hyperplasia, cardiovascular disease, contraception, Alzheimer's disease and melanoma. The formulations of this invention may also be used to treat bone loss resulting from secondary osteoporosis, including that categorized as endocrine in nature, including that resulting from glucocorticoid excess,  
15 hyperparathyroidism, hyperthyroidism, hypogonadism, hyperprolactinemia, and diabetes mellitus. The bone loss may also be the drug-induced, such as that resulting from heparin treatments, alcohol consumption, or the use of tobacco, barbiturates or corticosteroids. The drug-induced loss of bone may also stem from treatment with gonadotropin releasing hormone (GnRH or LHRH) or synthetic GnRH antagonists or  
20 agonists, such as the leuprolide acetate injectable sold by TAP Pharmaceuticals Inc. under the tradename LUPRON® or the goserelin acetate implant sold by Zeneca Pharmaceuticals under the Zoladex® tradename. Such bone loss may also result from immobilization of the individual, chronic renal failure, malabsorption syndrome, hepatic disease, chronic obstructive lung disease, rheumatoid arthritis, or sarcoidosis.

25           Additionally, these formulations can be used for hormone replacement therapy in post-menopausal women or in other estrogen deficiency states where estrogen supplementation would be beneficial. The symbiotic activity of the compounds and estrogen(s) of the present methods of treatment are particularly of interest in  
30 overcoming the unwanted consequences of estrogen therapy, such as breakthrough bleeding and/or excessive endometrial stimulation, which may lead to endometrial hyperplasia or endometriosis. These formulations, therefore, may be used in methods of treating or preventing excessive estrogenic uterine stimulation in a mammal.

35           The formulations of this invention may also be used in methods of treatment for bone loss, which may result from an imbalance in an individual's formation of new bone tissues and the resorption of older tissues, leading to a net loss of bone. Such bone depletion results in a range of individuals, particularly in post-menopausal

- 20 -

5 women, women who have undergone hysterectomy/oophorectomy, those receiving or  
who have received extended corticosteroid therapies, those experiencing gonadal  
dysgenesis, and those suffering from Cushing's syndrome. Special needs for bone  
replacement can also be addressed using these formulations in individuals with bone  
fractures, defective bone structures, and those receiving bone-related surgeries and/or  
10 the implantation of prosthesis. In addition to those problems described above, these  
formulations can be used in treatments for osteoarthritis, Paget's disease, osteomalacia,  
osteomalacia, endometrial cancer, multiple myeloma and other forms of cancer  
having deleterious effects on bone tissues. Methods of treating the maladies listed  
herein are understood to comprise administering to an individual in need of such  
15 treatment a pharmaceutically effective amount of one or more of the compounds of  
Formulas (I) and (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in conjunction with  
a therapeutically desirable amount of an estrogen. This invention also includes  
pharmaceutical compositions utilizing one or more of the present compounds, and/or  
the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, along with one or more pharmaceutically  
20 acceptable carriers, excipients, etc.

Estrogens regulate a number of physiological processes. The primary target  
tissues for estrogens include the reproductive tract (ovary; uterus; vagina), mammary  
tissue, skeleton, cardiovascular system and the central nervous system (CNS). The  
25 reduction in circulating estrogens results in a number of changes. There is a cessation  
in reproductive function with an associated amenorrhea, uterine atrophy, and increase  
in vaginal dryness (lack of keratinization). Mammary tissue becomes relatively  
quiescent. There is an increase in the rate of loss of bone mass (2-7%) compared to the  
normal 0.5-1.0%/year that is seen in all individuals over the age of 35. A change in  
30 lipid profile occurs with increases in Low Density Lipoprotein (LDL) and decreases in  
High Density Lipoprotein (HDL) commonly measured and an associated increased risk  
of a cardiovascular event (heart attack, stroke). Changes in the central nervous system  
include an increase in vasomotor symptoms (hot flush) and potentially changes in  
cognition and memory.

35

Estrogen replacement therapy (ERT) normalizes some of these changes,  
particularly those associated with the cardiovascular system (reduced LDL, increased  
HDL, reduced risk of heart attack), the skeleton (maintenance of bone mass, reduced

- 21 -

5 fracture risk), and central nervous system (reduction in frequency and severity of the hot flush). While the reproductive tract responds, it is not all positive. On the positive side, vaginal dryness is alleviated. However, negative uterine responses include hypertrophy and hyperplasia, along with some menstrual-like bleeding. The breast is also affected and there are data correlating exogenous estrogen therapy with an  
10 increased risk of breast cancer.

Currently, women with intact uteri are generally not prescribed estrogens alone, but estrogens in combination with a progestin to reduce uterine stimulation. While the risks of endometrial cancer are reduced to non-hormone treated levels, the other side  
15 effects of progestins reduce compliance in women on hormone replacement.

The tissue selective estrogen (TSE) compounds of this invention provide positive skeletal and cardiovascular affects similar to estrogens, without the negative effects associated with the uterus and breast. The combinations of TSEs and estrogens  
20 derive the positive effects of estrogens on the CNS, bone and cardiovascular, with the combination providing complimentary or additive effects on the bone and cardiovascular systems. The major variable is the TSEs ability to block estrogenic influence on the uterus and breast, which are the two major negative effects of unopposed estrogens.

25

It is understood that the dosage, regimen and mode of administration of these compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) will vary according to the malady and the individual being treated and will be subjected to the judgment of the medical practitioner involved. It is preferred that the administration of one or more of the compounds  
30 herein begins at a low dose and be increased until the desired effects are achieved. Similarly, it will be understood that the dosage(s) of the estrogen(s) utilized in the present formulations will be selected according to conventional methods. It is most preferred that the dosage will be monitored to achieve the desired result with the minimum of estrogen(s) necessary.

35

Effective administration of these compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) may be given at a dose of from about 0.01 mg/day to about 1,000 mg/day. Preferably, administration will be from about 1 mg/day to about 600 mg/day in a single dose or in

- 22 -

5 two or more divided doses. Most preferably a daily dose of between about 1 mg/day and about 150 mg/day will be administered. Such doses may be administered in any manner useful in directing the active compounds herein to the recipient, including orally, parenterally (including intravenous, intraperitoneal and subcutaneous injections, implants, etc.), intravaginally and transdermally. For the purposes of this disclosure,  
10 transdermal administrations are understood to include all administrations across the surface of the body and the inner linings of bodily passages including epithelial and mucosal tissues. Such administrations may be carried out using the present compounds, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, in lotions, creams, foams, patches, suspensions, solutions, and suppositories (rectal and vaginal).

15

Oral formulations containing the active compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) may comprise any conventionally used oral forms, including tablets, capsules, buccal forms, troches, lozenges and oral liquids, suspensions or solutions. Capsules may  
20 contain mixtures of the active compound(s) with inert fillers and/or diluents such as the pharmaceutically acceptable starches (e.g. corn, potato or tapioca starch), sugars, artificial sweetening agents, powdered celluloses, such as crystalline and microcrystalline celluloses, flours, gelatins, gums, etc. Useful tablet formulations may be made by conventional compression, wet granulation or dry granulation methods and  
25 utilize pharmaceutically acceptable diluents, binding agents, lubricants, disintegrants, suspending or stabilizing agents, including, but not limited to, magnesium stearate, stearic acid, talc, sodium lauryl sulfate, microcrystalline cellulose, carboxymethylcellulose calcium, polyvinylpyrrolidone, gelatin, alginic acid, acacia gum, xanthan gum, sodium citrate, complex silicates, calcium carbonate, glycine,  
30 dextrin, sucrose, sorbitol, dicalcium phosphate, calcium sulfate, lactose, kaolin, mannitol, sodium chloride, talc, dry starches and powdered sugar. Oral formulations herein may utilize standard delay or time release formulations to alter the absorption of the active compound(s). Suppository formulations may be made from traditional materials, including cocoa butter, with or without the addition of waxes to alter the  
35 suppository's melting point, and glycerin. Water soluble suppository bases, such as polyethylene glycols of various molecular weights, may also be used.

- 23 -

5           It will be understood that the estrogen of this invention will be administered in the dosages of conventional regimens, according to the recipient's tolerance and the particular treatment or maintenance schedule intended. The compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) herein will be administered in an amount necessary to agonize or antagonize the estrogen(s) of the formulation's activity to the level desired. When conjugated  
10           estrogens, USP, are used, it is preferred that the daily dosage is from 0.1 mg to 5.0 mg, more preferably between about 0.3 mg and about 2.5 mg, most preferably between about 0.3 and about 1.25 mg/day. For mestranol or ethynyl estradiol a daily dosage may be from about 1 µg to about 0.15 mg/day and a dosage of from about 1 µg to about 0.3 mg/day may be used for ethynyl estradiol, preferably between about 2 µg to  
15           about .15 mg/day of ethynyl estradiol.

          The compounds of this invention can be formulated neat or with a pharmaceutical carrier for administration, the proportion of which is determined by the solubility and chemical nature of the compound, chosen route of administration and  
20           standard pharmacological practice. The pharmaceutical carrier may be solid or liquid.

          A solid carrier can include one or more substances which may also act as flavoring agents, lubricants, solubilizers, suspending agents, fillers, glidants, compression aids, binders or tablet-disintegrating agents; it can also be an encapsulating  
25           material. In powders, the carrier is a finely divided solid which is in admixture with the finely divided active ingredient. In tablets, the active ingredient is mixed with a carrier having the necessary compression properties in suitable proportions and compacted in the shape and size desired. The powders and tablets preferably contain up to 99% of the active ingredient. Suitable solid carriers include, for example, calcium phosphate,  
30           magnesium stearate, talc, sugars, lactose, dextrin, starch, gelatin, cellulose, methyl cellulose, sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, polyvinylpyrrolidone, low melting waxes and ion exchange resins.

          Liquid carriers are used in preparing solutions, suspensions, emulsions,  
35           syrops, elixirs and pressurized compositions. The active ingredient can be dissolved or suspended in a pharmaceutically acceptable liquid carrier such as water, an organic solvent, a mixture of both or pharmaceutically acceptable oils or fats. The liquid carrier can contain other suitable pharmaceutical additives such as solubilizers, emulsifiers,

- 24 -

5 buffers, preservatives, sweeteners, flavoring agents, suspending agents, thickening  
agents, colors, viscosity regulators, stabilizers or osmo-regulators. Suitable examples  
of liquid carriers for oral and parenteral administration include water (partially  
containing additives as above, e.g. cellulose derivatives, preferably sodium  
10 carboxymethyl cellulose solution), alcohols (including monohydric alcohols and  
polyhydric alcohols, e.g. glycols) and their derivatives, lethicins, and oils (e.g.  
fractionated coconut oil and arachis oil). For parenteral administration, the carrier can  
also be an oily ester such as ethyl oleate and isopropyl myristate. Sterile liquid carriers  
are useful in sterile liquid form compositions for parenteral administration. The liquid  
carrier for pressurized compositions can be halogenated hydrocarbon or other  
15 pharmaceutically acceptable propellant.

Liquid pharmaceutical compositions which are sterile solutions or suspensions  
can be utilized by, for example, intramuscular, intraperitoneal or subcutaneous  
injection. Sterile solutions can also be administered intravenously. The compounds of  
20 this invention can also be administered orally either in liquid or solid composition form.

The compounds of this invention may be administered rectally or vaginally in  
the form of a conventional suppository, creams, gels, etc. For administration by  
intranasal or intrabronchial inhalation or insufflation, the compounds of this invention  
25 may be formulated into an aqueous or partially aqueous solution, which can then be  
utilized in the form of an aerosol. The compounds of this invention may also be  
administered transdermally through the use of a transdermal patch containing the active  
compound and a carrier that is inert to the active compound, is non toxic to the skin,  
and allows delivery of the agent for systemic absorption into the blood stream via the  
30 skin. The carrier may take any number of forms such as creams and ointments, pastes,  
gels, and occlusive devices. The creams and ointments may be viscous liquid or  
semisolid emulsions of either the oil-in-water or water-in-oil type. Pastes comprised of  
absorptive powders dispersed in petroleum or hydrophilic petroleum containing the  
active ingredient may also be suitable. A variety of occlusive devices may be used to  
35 release the active ingredient into the blood stream such as a semipermeable membrane  
covering a reservoir containing the active ingredient with or without a carrier, or a  
matrix containing the active ingredient. Other occlusive devices are known in the  
literature.

- 25 -

5

The dosage requirements vary with the particular compositions employed, the route of administration, the severity of the symptoms presented and the particular subject being treated. Treatment will generally be initiated with small dosages less than the optimum dose of the compound. Thereafter the dosage is increased until the optimum effect under the circumstances is reached; precise dosages for oral, parenteral, transdermal, rectal or vaginal suppositories, nasal, or intrabronchial and other administrations will be determined by the administering physician based on experience with the individual subject treated. Preferably, the pharmaceutical composition is in unit dosage form, e.g. as tablets or capsules. In such form, the composition is subdivided in unit dose containing appropriate quantities of the active ingredient; the unit dosage forms can be packaged compositions, for example, packeted powders, vials, ampoules, prefilled syringes or sachets containing liquids. The unit dosage form can be, for example, a capsule or tablet itself, or it can be the appropriate number of any such compositions in package form.

20

The compound(s) of Formulas (I) and (II) and the estrogen(s) of the present formulations may be administered in separate dosage units, such as separate pills, tablets, powders, etc., or combined into one formulation. When optimum dosages for the compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) and the estrogens of these formulations have been determined, it may be preferable to incorporate both into a single formulation for ease of administration. It is also understood that the formulations herein may or may not include other pharmaceutically active components.

25

Solvents used for the reactions described herein were anhydrous Aldrich Sure Seal<sup>TM</sup> without further purification. Reagents were typically Aldrich and used without further purification. All reactions were carried out under a nitrogen atmosphere. Chromatography was performed using 230-400 mesh silica gel (Merck Grade 60, Aldrich Chemical Company). Thin layer chromatography was performed with Silica Gel 60 F254 plates from EM Science. <sup>1</sup>H NMR spectra were obtained on a Bruker AM-400 instrument in DMSO and chemical shifts reported in ppm. Melting points were determined on a Thomas-Hoover apparatus and are uncorrected. IR spectra were recorded on a Perkin-Elmer diffraction grating or Perkin-Elmer 784 spectrophotometers. Mass spectra were recorded on a Kratos MS 50 or Finnigan 8230

30

35

- 26 -

5 mass spectrometers. Elemental analyses were obtained with a Perkin-Elmer 2400 elemental analyzer. Analysis values for compounds with CHN analysis reported were within 0.4% of theoretical values.

### Synthesis of $\alpha$ -bromo ketones

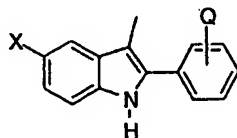
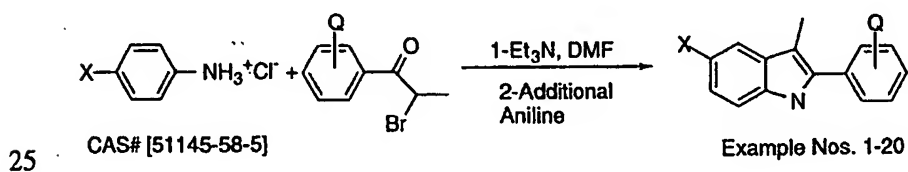
#### Method a

10

The synthesis of the alpha bromo ketones is conveniently accomplished by simply dissolving the starting phenyl ketone in ethyl ether (0.05-0.10 M) and at room temperature, 1.1 equivalents of bromine is added in dropwise. The reaction can be  
15 monitored by TLC for consumption of starting materials. The reaction is worked up by washing with an aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution followed by a 10% aqueous sodium sulfite solution. The ether layer is washed with brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. Concentration of the reaction mixture typically yields the bromoketones in good yield and purity. The bromoketones were taken "as is" (without  
20 purification or characterization) to the next step.

### 3-Methyl indoles

#### Scheme 8





5

Table 1

Example No.	X	Y
No. 1	H	H
No. 1a	F	OBn
No. 2	H	4'-Obn
No. 6	OBn	4'-OEt
No. 7	OBn	4'-OBn
No. 8	OBn	4'-F
No. 9	OBn	3'-OMe,4'-OBn
No. 10	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-
No. 11	OBn	4'-O-iPr
No. 12	OBn	4'-O-Cp
No. 13	OBn	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>
No. 14	OBn	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>
No. 15	OBn	4'-Cl
No. 16	OBn	2'-OMe,4'-OMe
No. 17	OBn	3'-OBn
No. 18	OBn	4'-OBn,3'-F
No. 19	OBn	3'-OMe
No. 20	OBn	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>

**Method 1****Illustrated For Example No. 7**

10

**5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

15

A flask was charged with 4-benzyloxyaniline hydrochloride CAS No. [51145-58-5]. (45 g, 0.23 mol), 4'-benzyloxy-2-bromophenylpropiophenone CAS No. [66414-19-5] (21g, 0.066 mol), and 50 mL DMF. The reaction was heated at reflux for 30 minutes and then cooled to rt and then partitioned between 250 mL EtOAc and 100 mL 1N HCl (aq). The EtOAc was washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (aq) and brine, then dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solution was concentrated and the residue taken up in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and hexanes added to precipitate out 25g of a crude solid. The solid was dissolved in

- 28 -

5 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and evaporated onto silica gel and chromatographed using CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/Hexane (1:5) to yield 9.2 g of a tan solid (33%): Mp = 150-152°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.88 (s, 1 H), 7.56 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.48 (d, 4 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.42-7.29 (m, 6 H), 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.13 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.08 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.94 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 2.33 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3470, 10 2880, 2820, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS EI m/z 419.

Method 2 (shown in scheme 8)

15 Also Illustrated For Example No. 7

Reagents used were same as in method 1 except the additional use of triethylamine in this method. The bromoketone CAS No. [66414-19-5] (50.0 g, 0.16 mol) in 200 mL DMF was treated with the aniline hydrochloride CAS No. [51145-58-5] (44 g, 0.22 mol) and the reaction purged with nitrogen for about 10 minutes. The triethylamine (54.6 mL) was added and the reaction was heated at 120°C for 2 hours. TLC analysis (EtOAc/hexanes) shows the starting material has dissappeared forming a more polar spot. The reaction mixture is allowed to cool down and an additional 48 g of the aniline hydrochloride was added. The reaction was heated to 150°C for 2 hours. 25 An additional 5 grams of the aniline hydrochloride was added and the reaction was heated at 150°C for an additional 30 minutes. The reaction mixture is allowed to cool to room temperature and then poured into approximately 1.5 liters of water and extracted with 2 liters of ethyl acetate. Solids are dissolved with additional ethyl acetate as neccessary. The ethyl acetate layer is washed with 1 liter of 1 N NaOH solution aq., 1 liter of water, brine, then dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The organic layers 30 were concentrated down to yield a crude solid which is stirred with 500 mL of methanol and filtered. This solid is then stirred with 500 mL of ethyl ether and filtered. The solid is stirred alternatively with methanol and ether until it is of whitish color and has a melting point similar to that described for No. 7 in method 1. Reaction yields 36 35 grams of product.

5

**Physical Data for Indoles**

The following 3-methyl indoles (No. 1- No. 20) were synthesized according to the procedure outlined in scheme 2 using method 2 using the appropriately substituted bromoketones (prepared as given above) and anilines (commercially available; Aldrich) as starting materials.

**Example No. 1 2-Phenyl-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 90 -94°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.13 (s, 1 H), 7.68 - 7.64 (m, 2 H), 7.54 - 7.46 (m, 3 H), 7.37 - 7.32 (m, 2 H), 7.12 - 7.06 (m, 1 H), 7.03 - 6.97 (m, 1 H), 2.40 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 207 (M+).

**Example No. 1a 5-Flouro-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 143 - 146°C.

**Example No. 2 2-(4-Benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 118 - 120°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.03 (s, 1 H), 7.57 (dd, 2 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 6.6 Hz), 7.48 - 7.46 (m, 3 H), 7.44 - 7.28 (m, 4 H), 7.18 - 7.11 (m, 2 H), 7.08 - 7.03 (m, 1 H), 7.0 - 6.95 (m, 1 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 2.36 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 313 (M+).

**Example No. 3 5-Benzyloxy-2-phenyl-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 141-144°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR(DMSO) 10.98 (s, 1 H), 7.65-7.61 (m, 2 H), 7.51-7.44 (m, 4 H), 7.42-7.28 (m, 4 H), 7.23 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8Hz), 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 2.5Hz), 6.80 (d, 1 H, J = 6.0Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 2.36 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 313 (M+).

**Example No. 4 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 158°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR 10.85 (brs, 1 H), 7.56 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.48 (d, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.45 - 7.36 (m, 2 H), 7.34 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.09 - 7.04 (m, 3 H), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.80 (s, 3 H), 2.33 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 343 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>2</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

5 **Example No. 5 5-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 139 - 142°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.85 (s, 1 H), 7.57 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz),  
7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 6.95 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz),  
6.71 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.5 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 3.80 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 2.33 (s, 3 H);  
MS EI m/z 267 (M+); CHN calc for C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>17</sub>NO<sub>2</sub>.

10

**Example No. 6 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 143-145°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.86 (s, 1H), 7.54 (d, 2 H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.46  
(d, 2 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.41-7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.32-7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6  
Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H), 7.03 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, J = 2.4  
15 Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.07 (q, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 2.32 (s, 3 H), 1.34 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0  
Hz); MS EI m/z 357 (M+).

**Example No. 8 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 132°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.0 (s, 1 H), 7.68-7.64 (m, 2 H), 7.49-7.47  
20 (m, 2 H), 7.41-7.31 (m, 5 H), 7.23 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz),  
6.82 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 2.34 (s, 3 H); MS EI m/z 331; CHN  
calcd for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>18</sub>FNO.

**Example No. 9 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-3-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
25 **mp** = 155 -158°C ; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.88 (s, 1H), 7.50 - 7.45 (m, 4 H), 7.41 -  
7.35 (m, 6H), 7.22 - 7.20 (m, 2 H), 7.14 (s, 2 H), 7.08 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2Hz), 6.78  
(dd, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz, J = 2.4Hz), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.11(s, 2H), 3.85 (s, 3H), 2.35  
(s, 3H); MS EI m/z 449 (M+).

30

**Example No. 10 2-Benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl-5-benzyloxy-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 142-145°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.86 (s, 1H), 7.48 (d, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.40  
- 7.30 (m, 3 H), 7.20 (m, 2 H), 7.10 - 7.05 (m, 3 H), 6.78 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J  
35 = 2.4 Hz), 6.06 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 2.31 (s, 3 H); MS EI m/z 357 (M+); CHN  
calc for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>19</sub>NO<sub>3</sub>.

5 **Example No. 11 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 136 - 138°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.86 (s, 1 H), 7.55 - 7.51 (m, 2 H), 7.50 - 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.40 - 7.34 (m, 2 H), 7.39 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.06 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.02 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.77 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz); 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.68 - 4.62 (m, 1 H), 2.32 (s, 3 H), 1.28 (d, 6 H, J = 6.0 Hz); MS ei m/z 371 (M+).

**Example No. 12 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-cyclopropyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

15 Mp = 161 - 167°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.85 (s, 1 H), 7.53 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.36 (m, 2 H), 7.33 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.07 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.01 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.78 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.88 - 4.84 (m, 1 H), 2.32 (s, 3 H), 1.99 - 1.88 (m, 2 H), 1.78 - 1.69 (m, 4 H), 1.64 - 1.52 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2920, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS ei m/z 397 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>27</sub>NO<sub>2</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

**Example No. 13 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.0 (br s, 1 H), 7.87 - 7.82 (m, 4 H), 7.48 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 25 7.44 - 7.35 (m, 2 H), 7.34 - 7.26 (m, 2 H), 7.15 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.87 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 2.41 (s, 3 H); CHN calcd for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>18</sub>F<sub>3</sub>NO.

30 **Example No. 14 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-methyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 144 - 146°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.91 (s, 1 H), 7.56 - 7.20 (m, 10 H), 7.08 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 2.34 (s, 3 H), 2.34 (s, 3 H); MS ei m/z 327 (M+).

35 **Example No. 15 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-chloro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 134-136°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.04 (s, 1H), 7.65 (d, 2H, J = 8.3Hz), 7.53 (d, 2 H, J = 8.5Hz), 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.41 - 7.37 (m, 2H), 7.31 - 7.28 (m, 1H), 7.25 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4Hz), 6.82

- 32 -

- 5 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2H), 2.35 (s, 3H); IR (KBr) 3380, 1210  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS EI m/z 347 (M+); CHN calc for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{18}\text{ClNO}_2$ .

**Example No. 16 5-Benzylloxy-2-(2,4-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

- 10 Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.58 (s, 1 H), 7.50 - 7.18 (m, 7 H), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.76 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.69 - 6.62 (m, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.82 (s, 3 H), 3.78 (s, 3 H), 2.12 (s, 3 H).

**Example No. 17 5-Benzylloxy-2-(3-benzylloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

- 15 Mp = 83 - 86°C

**Example No. 18 5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-benzylloxy-3-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

- 20 Mp = 135 - 137°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.94 (s, 1 H), 7.50 - 7.31 (m, 13 H), 7.22 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.81 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.23 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 2.34 (s, 3 H); MS EI m/z 437 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{24}\text{FNO}_2$ .

**Example No. 19 5-Benzylloxy-2-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

- 25 Mp = 107 - 109°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 11.00 (s, 1 H), 7.51 - 7.48 (m, 2 H), 7.43 - 7.20 (m, 7 H), 7.13 - 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.1 Hz), 6.93 - 6.90 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, J = 5.7 Hz), 6.86 - 6.82 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz), 30 5.12 (s, 2 H), 3.83 (s, 3 H), 2.38 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900, 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS EI m/z 343 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}_2$ .

**Example No. 20 5-Benzylloxy-3-methyl-2-(4-trifluoromethoxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

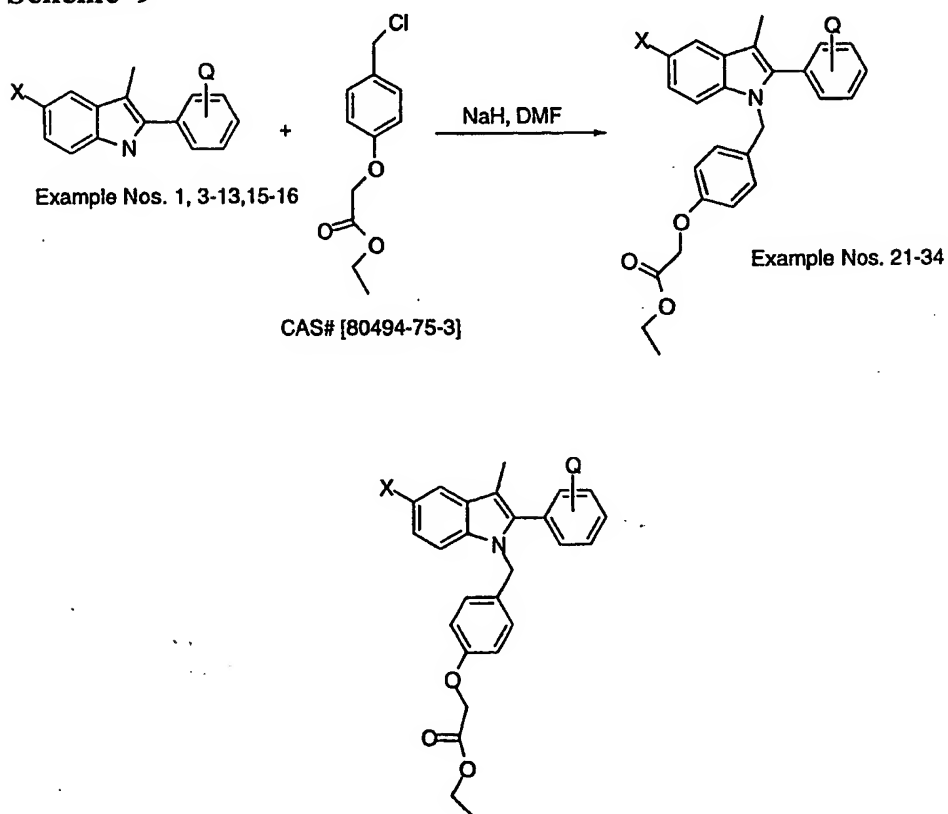
- 35 Mp = 127 - 128°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 11.07 (s, 1 H), 7.77 - 7.74 (dd, 2 H, J = 1.8 Hz, J = 5.0 Hz), 7.50 - 7.48 (d, 4 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.42 - 7.25 (m, 4 H), 7.14 - 7.13 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.87 - 6.83

- 33 -

- 5 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 2.3$  Hz,  $J = 6.3$  Hz), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 2.37 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3360, 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS EI  $m/z$  396 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{18}\text{F}_3\text{NO}_2$ .

### 3-Methylindole acetic acid ethyl esters

#### 10 Scheme 9



5

Table 2

Example No.	X	Q
No. 21	H	H
No. 22	OBn	H
No. 23	OBn	4'-OMe
No. 24	OMe	4'-OMe
No. 25	OBn	4'-OEt
No. 26	OBn	4'-OBn
No. 27	OBn	4'-F
No. 28	OBn	3'-OMe,4'-OBn
No. 29	OBn	4'-O-iPr
No. 30	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-
No. 31	OBn	4'-OCp
No. 32	OBn	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>
No. 33	OBn	4'-Cl
No. 34	OBn	2'-OMe, 4'-OMe

**Experimental Procedure For 3-Methylindole Acetic Acid Ethyl Esters****Synthesis Method 3**

10

**Illustrated For Example No. 26****{4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

15

A solution of 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole (indole example No. 7) (32g, 77 mmol) in DMF (0.15 L) was cooled to 0°C and treated with sodium hydride (2.2 g, 89 mmol). The reaction was stirred for 20 minutes and then the benzyl chloride CAS No. [80494-75-3] (29g, 127 mmol) was added and the reaction stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. The ethyl acetate was concentrated and triturated with ether to obtain 21 g of a white solid. The filtrate was concentrated and triturated with ether to

20



- 35 -

- 5 give an additional 7 g of white solid for a total yield of 28 g: Mp = 129-131°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.39 (q, 4 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.36-7.32 (m, 1 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.13-7.09 (m, 4 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.66 (s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.2 Hz); MS eI m/z 612.

### Physical Data For Indole Ethyl Esters

- 15 The following indole alkylation products were prepared according to scheme 9 using method 3 with the appropriately substituted 3-methyl indole selected from (No. 1- No. 16) as the starting material.

**Example No. 21 {4-[2-Phenyl-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

- 20 Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.57 - 7.30 (m, 7 H), 7.13 - 7.02 (m, 2 H), 6.77 - 6.70 (m, 4 H), 5.22 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.09 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.20 (s, 3 H), 1.15 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); MS eI m/z 399 (M+).

**Example No. 22 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-phenyl-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

- 25 Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR(DMSO) 7.50 - 7.40 (m, 10 H), 7.22 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4Hz), 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 2.5Hz), 6.83 (d, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.10 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.14 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0Hz); MS eI m/z 505 (M+).

30

**Example No. 23 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

- Mp = 90 - 96°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.41 - 7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.33 - 7.27 (m, 3 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.03 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr) 2990, 2900, 1760, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS FAB m/z 536 (M+H+).

5

**Example No. 24 {4-[5-Methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Mp = 109-113°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.27 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz),

7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.99 (d, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz),

10 6.78 - 6.70 (m, 5 H), 5.15 (s, 2H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.78 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.15 (t, 3 H, J = 7.1 Hz); MS eI m/z 459 (M<sup>+</sup>).

**Example No. 25 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

15 Mp = 113-115°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.40 - 7.25

(m, 5 H), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.01

(d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 6.78 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15

(s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.15 - 4.01 (m, 4 H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 1.33

20 (t, 3 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.1 Hz); MS eI m/z 549 (M<sup>+</sup>).

**Example No. 27 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-flouro-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.15 (m, 16 H), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.62 (s, 2 H),

25 4.13 (q, 2 H, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.18 (s, 3 H), 1.20 (t, 3 H, J = 7.1 Hz).

**Example No. 28 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(3-methoxy-4-benzyloxy)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.30 (m, 10 H), 7.22 (d, 2H, J = 9.1 Hz), 7.13 (d, 2

30 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.85 - 6.70 (m, 6 H), 5.17 (s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.66

(s, 2 H), 4.14 (m, 2H), 3.61 (s, 3 H), 2.17 (s, 3 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz).

**Example No. 29 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

35 Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.42 - 7.28 (m, 3 H), 7.25

(d, 2 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.99

(d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15

(s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.70 - 4.60 (m, 3 H), 4.10 (q, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.15

5 (s, 3 H), 1.27 (d, 6 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.1 Hz); MS eI m/z 563 (M+).

**Example No. 30 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(3,4-methylenedioxy-benzyloxy)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.32 (m, 1 H),  
10 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.00 (d, 1 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 6.90  
(d, 1 H, 5.0 Hz), 6.82 - 6.75 (m, 6H), 6.07 (s, 2H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.10  
(s, 2H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.10 (m, 2 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.15 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz);  
MS eI m/z 549 (M+).

15 **Example No. 31 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-cyclopentyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Mp = 96-98°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 1 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.40 - 7.36 (m, 2 H),  
7.33 - 7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.26 (m, 2 H), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11  
(d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz),  
20 6.74 (s, 5 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.86 - 4.80 (m, 1 H), 4.66 (s, 2 H), 4.13  
(q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.98 - 1.85 (m, 2 H), 1.79 - 1.65 (m, 4 H), 1.62  
- 1.55 (m, 2 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr) 2950, 2910, 2890, 1760, 1610  
cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 589 (M+); CHN calcd for C:77.39 H:6.67 N: 2.38 Found: C:76.76  
H:6.63 N:2.27.

25

**Example No. 32 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-3-methyl-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Mp = 221°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.60 (d, 2 H, J = 7.9 Hz),  
7.48 (d, 2 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.86  
30 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.65  
(s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.20 (s, 3 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr)  
2920, 1730 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 573 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>30</sub>F<sub>3</sub>NO<sub>4</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

35 **Example No. 33 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-chlorophenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Mp = 99-101°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.52 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.46  
(d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.42 - 7.38 (m, 4 H), 7.36 (m, 1H), 7.25

- 38 -

5 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.15 (t, 3 H, J = 7.2 Hz); MS el m/z 539 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calc for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>30</sub>ClNO<sub>4</sub>.

10 **Example No. 34** **{4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(2,4-dimethoxy)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

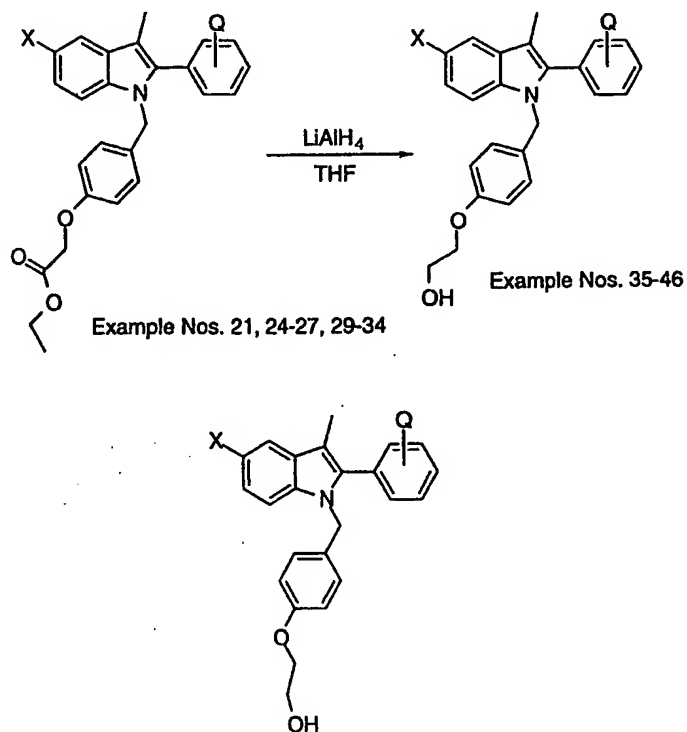
Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.30 - 6.45 (m, 15 H), 4.95 (s, 2 H), 4.75 - 4.65 (m, 2 H), 4.50 (s, 2 H), 3.97 (q, 2 H, J = 7.1 Hz), 3.65 (s, 3 H), 3.51 (s, 3 H), 1.87 (3 H), 1.01

15 (t, 3 H, J = 7.1 Hz).

**3-Methylindole phenylethanols**

**Scheme 10**

20



5

Table 3

Example No.	X	Q
No. 35	H	H
No. 36	OMe	4'-OMe
No. 37	OBn	4'-OEt
No. 38	OBn	4'-OBn
No. 39	OBn	4'-F
No. 40	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-
No. 41	OBn	4'-O-iPr
No. 42	OBn	4'-OCp
No. 43	OBn	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>
No. 44	OBn	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>
No. 45	OBn	4'-Cl
No. 46	OBn	2'-OMe, 4'-OMe

### Experimental Procedure For 3-Methylindole Phenethanols Synthesis

#### Method 4

10

#### Illustrated For Example No. 38

#### 2-{4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

15

A solution of No. 26 from previous step (5.5 g, 8.8 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was cooled to 0°C and a solution of LiAlH<sub>4</sub> (10mL, 1 M) in THF was added dropwise. After 30 minutes at 0°C the reaction was carefully quenched with water, and partitioned between EtOAc and 1 N HCl. The EtOAc was dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, concentrated, and chromatographed on silica gel EtOAc/hexane (2:3) to yield 4.0 g of No. 38 as a white

20 foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48-7.46 (m, 4 H), 7.42-7.27 (m, 8 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12-7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (t, 1 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.86 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.63 (q, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H).

5                    **Physical Data For Indole Phenethanols**

Following compounds were made according to scheme 10 and method 4 using the appropriately substituted indole ethyl ester selected from No. 21- No. 34.

10    **Example No. 35    2-{4-[2-phenyl-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol**

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.57 - 7.32 (m, 7 H), 7.13 - 7.02 (m, 2 H), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (s, 1 H), 3.86 - 3.83 (m, 2 H), 3.62 (s, 2 H), 2.20 (s, 3 H); MS el m/z 357 (M+).

15    **Example No. 36    2-{4-[5-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol**

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.27 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.99 (d, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.78 - 6.70 (m, 5 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (brs, 1H), 3.85 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.78 (s, 3H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.63 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3H); MS el m/z 417 (M+).

25    **Example No. 37    2-{4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol**

Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.40 - 7.25 (m, 5 H), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.01 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 6.78 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 4.80 (brs, 1 H), 4.06 (q, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.85 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 2.14 (s, 3H), 1.33 (t, 3H, J = 6.9 Hz); MS el m/z 507 (M+).

30    **Example No. 39    2-{4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(4-flouro-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol**

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.40 - 6.60 (m, 16 H), 5.10 (s, 1 H), 5.07 (s, 2 H), 5.02 (s, 2 H), 3.76 (t, 2 H, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.53 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 2.06 (s, 3 H).

35

5 **Example No. 40** 2-{4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(3,4-methylenedioxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.32 (m, 1 H), 7.19 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.00 (d, 1 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 6.90 (d, 1 H, 5.0 Hz), 6.82 - 6.75 (m, 6H), 6.07 (s, 2 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.86 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS el m/z 507 (M+).

**Example No. 41** 2-{4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

15 Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.42 - 7.28 (m, 3 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (bs, 1 H), 4.70 - 4.60 (m, 1 H), 3.85 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.30 (d, 6 H, J = 5.9 Hz); MS el m/z 521 (M+).

**Example No. 42** 2-{4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-cyclopentyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

Mp = 129-131°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.38 (t, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.33 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.84 - 4.80 (m, 1 H), 4.79 (t, 1 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.86 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.63 (q, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.96 - 1.87 (m, 2 H), 1.77 - 1.65 (m, 4 H), 1.62 - 1.53 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3490 br, 2920, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS el m/Z 547 (M+).

**Example No. 43** 2-{4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

35 Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.59 (d, 2 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.42 - 7.36 (m, 2 H), 7.35 - 7.29 (m, 2 H), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.87 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.77 - 6.68 (m, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.81 (br s, 1 H), 3.85 (t, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 2.19 (s, 3 H); MS el m/z 531.

5

**Example No. 44** 2-{4-[5-Benzoyloxy-2-(4-methyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.45 - 7.18 (m, 8 H), 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.81 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (bs, 1 H), 3.85 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H, J = 4.9 Hz), 2.34 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS el m/z 477 (M+).

10

**Example No. 45** 2-{4-[5-Benzoyloxy-2-(4-chloro-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

15 Mp = 110 - 113°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.52 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.38 (m, 4 H), 7.42 - 7.37 (m, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.76 - 6.70 (m, 4 H), 5.17 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.85 (t, 2 H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3 H); MS el m/z 497 (M+).

20

**Example No. 46** 2-{4-[5-Benzoyloxy-2-(2,4-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

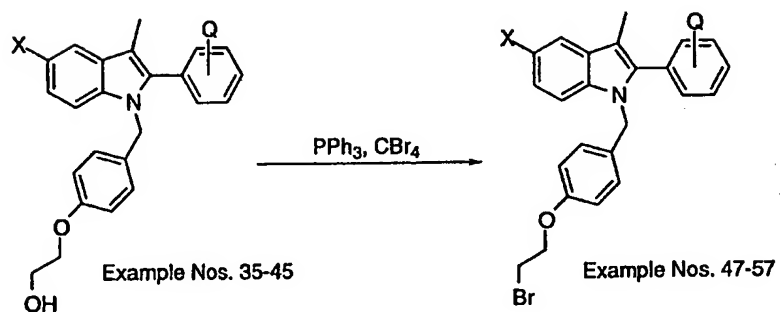
Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2 H, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.39 - 7.35 (m, 2 H), 7.31 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.16 - 7.06 (m, 3 H), 6.82 - 6.72 (m, 5 H), 6.68 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.61 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.3 Hz), 5.0 (s, 1 H), 4.88 (s, 2 H), 4.85 (d, 1 H, J = 6.3 Hz), 4.69 (d, 1 H, J = 6.3 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H, J = 6.9 Hz), 3.58 (s, 3 H), 3.46 (s, 3 H), 3.40 (t, 2 H, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.80 (s, 3 H).

25

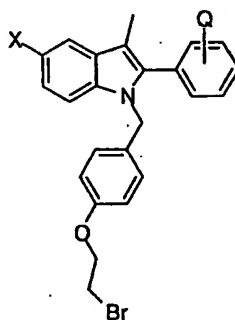


5 **Data for 3-methylindole phenylethyl bromides**

Scheme 11



10



15

Table 4

Example No.	X	Q
No. 47	H	H
No. 48	OMe	4'-OMe
No. 49	OBn	4'-OEt
No. 50	OBn	4'-OBn

5

Table 4 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q
No. 51	OBn	4'-F
No. 52	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-
No. 52a	OBn	3'-OMe, 4'-OBn
No. 53	OBn	4'-O-iPr
No. 54	OBn	4'-OCp
No. 55	OBn	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>
No. 56	OBn	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>
No. 57	OBn	4'-Cl

10

**Experimental Procedure For 3-Methylindole Phenethyl bromide****Synthesis****Method 5****Illustrated For Example No. 50****Example No. 50**

15 **5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

To a solution of example No. 38 (3.3 g, 5.8 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added CBr<sub>4</sub> (2.9 g, 8.7 mmol) and PPH<sub>3</sub> (2.3 g, 8.7 mmol). The reaction was stirred at rt for 3 h and then concentrated and chromatographed on silica gel using a gradient elution from EtOAc/hexane (1:4) to EtOAc to give 3.2 g of a white solid: Mp = 131-134°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.64-7.30 (m, 10 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12-7.09 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 6.77-6.73 (m, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.73 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS FAB 631/633 (M+H<sup>+</sup>, Br present).

20

25

5                    **Physical Data for Indole Phenethyl Bromides**

The following compounds were made according to scheme 11 as described in Method 5 using the appropriately substituted indole selected from No. 35- No. 45.

10

**Example No. 47 1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-phenyl-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.57 - 7.32 (m, 7 H), 7.13 - 7.02 (m, 2 H), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 4.19 (t, 2 H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.71 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.20 (s, 3 H); MS  
15 eI m/z 419 (M+).

**Example No. 48 5-Methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.27 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03  
20 (d, 2 H J = 8.6 Hz), 6.99 (d, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.80 - 6.69 (m, 5 H), 5.14 (s, 2H), 4.19 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.78 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.72 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3H); MS eI m/z 479 (M+).

**Example No. 49 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

25 Mp = 118-120°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.41 - 7.26 (m, 5 H), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.01 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 6.78 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.78 - 6.74 (m, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.22 - 4.18 (m, 2 H), 4.04 (q, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.72  
30 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.33 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); MS eI m/z 569 (M+).

**Example No. 51 5-Benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

35 Mp = 114-116°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (m, 2 H), 7.45 - 7.20 (m, 8 H), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.7 Hz, 9.0 Hz), 6.80 - 6.70 (m, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 4.19 (t, 2 H, J = 5.27 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 543 (M+); CHN calc for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>27</sub>BrFNO<sub>2</sub>.

5 **Example No. 52 2-Benzo[1,3]dioxyl-5-yl-5-benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 133-136°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.41-7.38 (m, 2 H), 7.35-7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.00 (d, 1 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 6.90 (d, 1 H, 1.4 Hz), 6.82 - 6.78 (m, 2H), 6.77 (s, 4 H),  
10 6.07 (s, 2 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5Hz), 3.73 (t, 2H, J = 5.2Hz), 2.15 (s, 3H); MS eI m/z 569 (M+).

**Example No. 52a 5-Benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(3-methoxy-4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

15 Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 - 7.42 (m, 4 H), 7.40 - 7.30 (m, 6 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12 - 7.10 (m, 2 H), 6.86 - 6.84 (m, 2 H), 6.81 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.78 (s, 4 H), 5.17 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.63 (s, 3 H), 2.17 (s, 3 H); MS FAB m/z 662 (M+H+).

20

**Example No. 53 5-Benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 125 - 128°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.42 - 7.28 (m, 3 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.99  
25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.70 - 4.60 (m, 1 H), 4.19 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H, J = 4.4 Hz), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.30 (d, 6 H, J = 5.9 Hz); MS eI m/z 583 (M+).

**Example No. 54 5-Benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-cyclopentyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

30 Mp = 110 - 112°C; 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.38 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.35 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.78 - 6.74 (m, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.86 - 4.83 (m, 1 H), 4.20  
35 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.73 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 2.00 - 1.87 (m, 2 H), 1.79 - 1.65 (m, 4 H), 1.63 - 1.56 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 2950, 2910, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 609, 611 (M+, Br present).

- 47 -

5    **Example No. 55    5-Benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-1H-indole**

Mp = 106 - 109°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.60 (d, 2 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.35 - 7.29 (m, 2 H), 7.48 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.39 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.87 (dd, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz, 2.6 Hz),  
10    6.77 - 6.71 (m, 4 H), 5.22 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 2.20 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 2910, 2850, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 595, 593 (M<sup>+</sup>)

15    **Example No. 56    5-Benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-(4-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole**

Mp = 82 - 95°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.45 - 7.18 (m, 8 H), 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.81 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.19 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H, J = 4.4 Hz), 2.34 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 539 (M<sup>+</sup>).

20

**Example No. 57    5-Benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-(4-chloro-phenyl)-1H-indole**

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.52 (d, 2H, J = 8.6Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 6.8Hz), 7.38 (m, 4 H), 7.36 (m, 1H), 7.25 (d, 1H, J = 9.0Hz), 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 2.4Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.72 (m, 4H), 5.17 (s, 2H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 4.19  
25    (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3H); MS eI m/z 559 (M<sup>+</sup>).

5      Data for some 3-methylindole phenylethyl chlorides used as  
         intermediates

Scheme 12

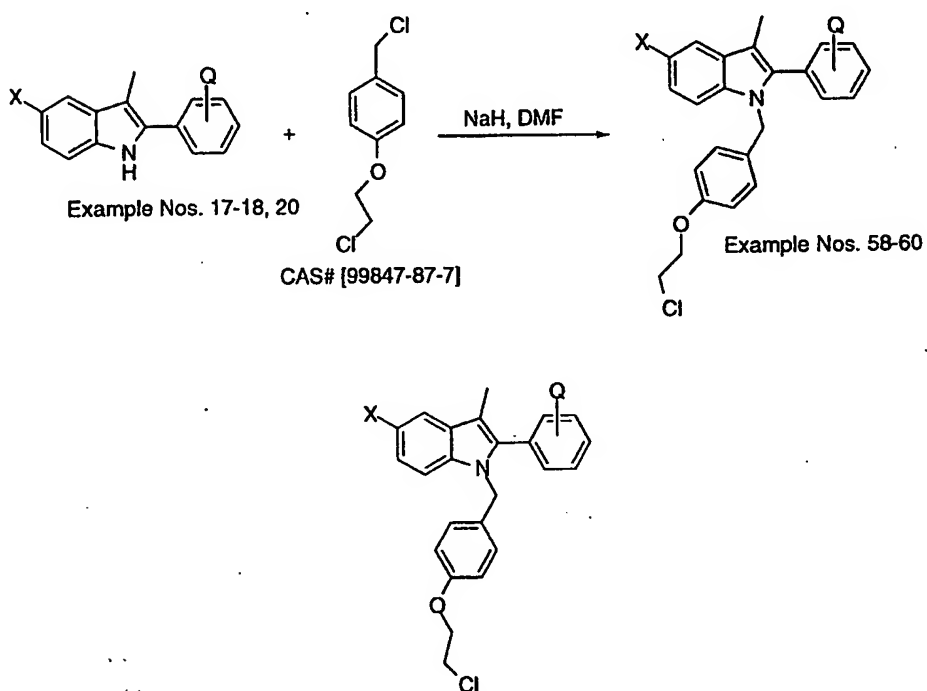


Table 5

15

Example No.	X	Q
No. 58	OBn	3'-OBn
No. 59	OBn	3'-F, 4'-OBn
No. 60	OBn	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>

5        **Experimental Procedure For 3-Methylindole Phenethylchloride****Synthesis****Method 5a****Illustrated For Example No. 58**10        **5-Benzyloxy-2-(3-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-chloro-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

To a solution of 9.7 g (0.0231 mol) of 5-benzyloxy-3-methyl-2-(3-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1H-indole (indole example No. 17) in 80 mL of dry DMF was added 0.85 g of sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil). After allowing this mixture to stir for 30 minutes (until no more bubbling was indicated), 4.8 g of 1-chloromethyl-4-(2-chloro-ethoxy)-benzene CAS No. [99847-87-7] was added. The reaction mixture was allowed to react at room temperature overnight. 200 mL of ethyl acetate were added to the reaction mixture and then washed with water (3 x 100 mL). The organic solution was collected, washed with saturated brine, removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to dryness in a rotary evaporator. The product was recrystallized in ethyl acetate.

Mp = 125 - 127°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.46 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.35 (m, 7 H), 7.33 - 7.28 (m, 2 H), 7.23 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.13 - 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.07 - 7.04 (m, 1 H), 6.94 - 6.92 (d, 2 H, J = 6.1 Hz), 6.83 - 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz), 6.78 - 6.72 (m, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.04 (s, 2 H), 4.13 - 4.10 (t, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.86 - 3.84 (t, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 2.14 (s, 3 H); IR 3420, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 587 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>34</sub>ClNO<sub>3</sub>.

30        **Physical Data for Indole Phenethyl Chlorides**

The following compounds were made according to scheme 12 as described in Method 5a using the appropriately substituted indoles No. 18, No. 20.

35        **Example No. 59 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-3-fluoro-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-chloro-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 88-91°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.49-7.43 (m, 4H), 7.43-7.28 (m, 7H), 7.26-7.21 (m, 2H), 7.13-7.09 (m, 2H), 6.88-6.72 (m, 5H), 5.21 (s, 2H), 5.18 (s, 2H), 5.11

- 50 -

5 (s, 2H), 4.13 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.87 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3H); MS eI m/z 605 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>33</sub>ClFNO<sub>3</sub>.

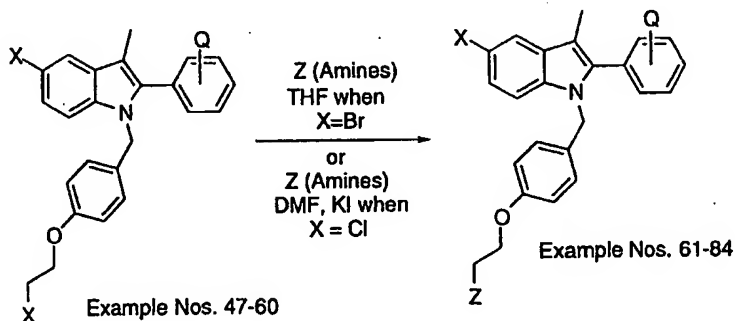
**Example No. 60 5-Benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-chloro-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-(4-trifluoromethoxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

10 Mp = 108 - 110°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.49 - 7.48 (m, 6 H), 7.40 - 7.25 (m, 4 H), 7.17 - 7.16 (d, 1 H, J = 2.9 Hz), 6.88 - 6.84 (m, 1 H), 6.77 - 6.72 (m, 4 H), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 5.14 - 5.13 (d, 2 H, J = 2.3 Hz), 4.16 - 4.11 (m, 2 H), 3.89 - 3.84 (m, 2 H), 2.19 - 2.17 (m, 3 H); IR 3400, 2900, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 566 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>27</sub>ClF<sub>3</sub>NO<sub>3</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

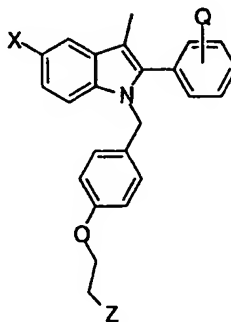
15

Aminoethoxy indoles

Scheme 13







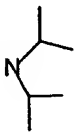
20





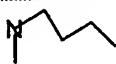



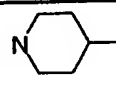
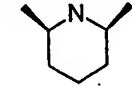
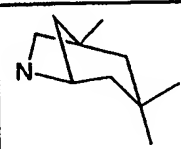
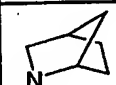
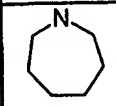
5

Table 6

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 61	OBn	4'-OEt	
No. 62	OBn	H	
No. 63	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 64	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 65	OBn	4'-OBn	










5

Table 6 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 66	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 66a	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 67	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 68	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 69	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 70	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 71	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 71a	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 72	OBn	4'-F	



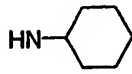
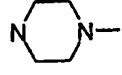

5

Table 6 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 72a	OBn	4'-F	
No. 72b	OBn	4'-Cl	
No. 73	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-	
No. 74	OBn	4'-O-iPr	
No. 75	OBn	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>	
No. 76	OBn	3'-OBn	
No. 77	OBn	3'-OBn	
No. 78	OBn	4'-OBn,3'-F	
No. 79	OBn	4'-OBn,3'-F	

5

Table 6 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 80	OBn	3'-OMe	
No. 81	OBn	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>	
No. 82	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 83	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 84	OBn	3'-OMe	

**Experimental Procedure For 3-Methyl aminoethoxyindole Synthesis****Method 6****Illustrated For Example No. 63****Substitution of the Bromide****5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

15

A solution of example No. 50 (3.2 g, 5.0 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was treated with piperidine (5.0 mL, 50 mmol) and heated to reflux. After 5 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated and taken up in EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and column chromatographed on silica gel using a gradient elution of EtOAc/Hexane to EtOAc. The product (2.7 g) was a white solid with a Mp = 93-95°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48-7.46 (m, 4 H), 7.42-7.38 (m, 4 H), 7.38-7.32 (m, 2 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.12-7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2

20

- 55 -

5 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.60-2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.41-2.30 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.47-1.42 (m, 4 H), 1.36-1.32 (m, 2 H); MS FAB 637 (M+H<sup>+</sup>).

### Alternative Procedure

#### Method 6a

10

#### Substitution of chlorides

#### Synthesis illustrated for product No. 76

15 Example No. 76 5-Benzyloxy-2-(3-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

20 To a solution of 1.1 g (0.00953 mol) of 5-benzyloxy-2-(3-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-chloro-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole (example No. 58) in 10 mL of DMF was added 1.1 mL (0.0112 mol) of piperidine, and 0.93 g (0.00561 mol) of potassium iodide. The reaction mixture was heated to ~40-50° C for 4 hours. After cooling the reaction mixture to room temperature, 150 mL of ethyl acetate were added and the mixture was washed with water (3 x 100 mL). The organic solution was collected, washed with saturated brine, removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to yield 1.0 g of product of the product after purification.

25 Mp = 125 - 126°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.41 - 7.35 (m, 7 H), 7.33 - 7.28 (m, 2 H), 7.23 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.13 - 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.06 - 7.03 (m, 1 H), 6.95 - 6.91 (m, 2 H), 6.83 - 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz), 6.75 - 6.70 (m, 4 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.02 (s, 2 H), 3.93 - 3.90 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.56 - 2.53 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.49 - 2.48 (m, 4 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.46 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.35 - 1.31 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS EI m/z 636 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>44</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

#### Physical data for the amine substituted compounds

The following compounds were prepared by scheme 13 using method 6.

35 Except for examples No. 76- No. 84 which were prepared using method 6a.

5 **Example No. 61 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 188 - 191°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.40 - 7.25 (m, 5 H), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.01 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 6.78 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 10 2H), 4.05 (q, 2H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.93 (t, 2H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.41 - 2.35 (m, 4 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.46 - 1.40 (m, 4H), 1.38 - 1.30 (m, 5 H); MS eI m/z 574 (M+).

15 **Example No. 62 5-Benzyloxy-2-phenyl-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50-7.43 (m, 4 H), 7.42-7.37 (m, 5 H), 7.33-7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.22 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.81 (d, 1 H, J = 6.6 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.90 (t, 2 H, J = 6.1 Hz), 2.81- 2.75 (m, 2 H), 2.68-2.59 (m, 4 H), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.58-1.43 (m, 8 H); MS eI m/z 20 544 (M+).

**Example No. 64 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 106 - 107°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.41 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 25 7.36 - 7.30 (m, 2 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.90 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.76 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.64 - 2.56 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.58 - 1.44 (m, 8 H); MS FAB m/z 651 (M+H+).

30 **Example No. 65 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-diisopropylamino-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 148 - 150°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.41 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 7.36 - 7.32 (m, 2 H), 7.28 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.13 - 7.08 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.76 - 6.68 (m, 4 H), 5.14 35 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.75 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.95 (m, 2 H), 2.67 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 0.93 (d, 12 H, J = 6.4 Hz); MS FAB m/z 653 (M+H+).

5    **Example No. 66    5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-benzylloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-butyl-methylamino-1-ylethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 101 - 104°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 4 H, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.40 - 7.25 (m, 8 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12-7.08 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 6.5 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.91

10 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.64-2.59 (m, 2H), 2.35-2.29 (m, 2 H), 2.17 (s, 3 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.40-1.31 (m, 2 H), 1.25-1.19 (m, 2 H), 0.83 (t, 3 H, 7.2 Hz); MS el m/z 638 (M+).

15    **Example No. 66a    5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-benzylloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(dimethylamino)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 123-124°C

20    **Example No. 67    5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-benzylloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(2-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 121°C

25    **Example No. 68    5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-benzylloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(3-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 90°C

30    **Example No. 69    5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-benzylloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(4-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 98°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 4 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.42 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 7.36 - 7.31 (m, 2 H), 7.28 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.12 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.85 - 2.78 (m, 2 H), 2.62 - 2.56 (m, 2 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.97 - 1.87 (m, 2 H), 1.55 - 1.47 (m, 2 H), 1.30 - 1.20 (m, 1 H), 1.15 - 1.02 (m, 2 H), 0.85 (d, 3 H, J = 6.6 Hz); MS esI m/z 651 (M+1)+.

35    **Example No. 70    5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-benzylloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1[4-[2-((cis)-2,6-Dimethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 106 - 107°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 4 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.42 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 7.37 - 7.31 (m, 2 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 -

5 7.09 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.84 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.84 (t, 2 H, J = 6.6 Hz), 2.44 - 2.37 (m, 2 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.60 - 1.43 (m, 3 H), 1.32 - 1.18 (m, 1 H), 1.16 - 1.06 (m, 2 H), 1.01 (d, 6 H, J = 6.2 Hz).

10 **Example No. 71** 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-{4-[2-(1,3,3-trimethyl-6-aza-bicyclo[3.2.1]oct-6-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-1H-indole

Mp = 107°C; MS ESI m/z 705 (M+)+

15 **Example No. 71a** (1S,4R)-5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl{4-[2-(2-Aza-bicyclo [2.2.1] hept-2-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-1H-indole

The (1S,2R)- 2-aza-bicyclo [2.2.1] heptane used to substitute the bromide was prepared according to the procedure outlined in Syn. Comm. 26(3), 577-584 (1996).

20 Mp = 95 - 100°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.32 - 6.55 (m, 21 H), 5.10 - 4.90 (m, 6 H), 3.69 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.65 - 2.5 (m, 3 H), 2.10 (s, 2 H), 2.0 (s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.0 (m, 7 H).

**Example No. 72** 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-flouro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

25 Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.43 (m, 2 H), 7.42 - 7.33 (m, 4 H), 7.32 - 7.20 (m, 4 H), 7.13 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 6.7 Hz), 6.71 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.89 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.20 (m, 4 H), 2.74 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.60 - 1.40 (m, 8 H); MS eI m/z 562 (M+).

30

**Example No. 72a** 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-flouro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.32 - 6.53 (m, 16 H), 5.00 (s, 2 H), 4.96 (s, 2 H), 3.77 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 3.22 - 3.14 (m, 4 H), 2.40 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.0 (s, 3 H), 1.29 -

35 1.17 (m, 6 H).



5 **Example No. 72b** 5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-chloro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.52 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.41 - 7.37 (m, 4 H), 7.35 - 7.29 (m, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.5 Hz), 6.72 - 6.65 (m, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 10 2 H), 3.90 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.41 - 2.26 (m, 4 H), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.44 - 1.39 (m, 4 H), 1.38 - 1.29 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 564 (M+).

**Example No. 73** 5-Benzylloxy-2-[3,4-methylenedioxy-phenyl]-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

15 Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.41-7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.33-7.29 (m, 1 H), 7.19 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.00 (d, 1 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 6.90 (d, 1 H, 1.4 Hz), 6.82 - 6.78 (m, 2H), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.07 (s, 2 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.56 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0Hz), 2.41-2.35 (m, 4H), 2.15 (s, 3H), 1.48-1.41 (m, 4H), 1.38-1.28 (m, 2H); MS eI m/z 574 20 (M+).

**Example No. 74** 5-Benzylloxy-2-[4-isopropoxy-phenyl]-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.42 - 7.28 (m, 3 H), 7.25 25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.70 - 4.60 (m, 1 H), 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H, 5.7 Hz), 2.40 - 2.30 (bs, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.40 - 1.30 (m, 2 H), 1.28 (d, 6 H, J = 6.2 Hz); MS eI m/z 588 (M+).

30

**Example No. 75** 5-Benzylloxy-2-[4-methyl-phenyl]-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.45 - 7.18 (m, 8 H), 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.81 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 35 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.45 - 2.30 (m, 7 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.48 - 1.35 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 544 (M+).

5    **Example No. 77   1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-5-benzyloxy-2-(3-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 103 - 105°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 - 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.41 - 7.35 (m, 7 H), 7.32 - 7.29 (t, 2 H, 7.0 Hz), 7.23 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.13 - 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.1 Hz), 7.06 - 7.03 (m, 1 H), 6.95 - 6.91 (m, 2 H), 6.83 - 6.80 (m, 1 H), 6.75 - 6.73 (m, 4 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.02 (s, 2 H), 3.90 - 3.87 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.76 - 2.73 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.49 - 2.48 (m, 4 H), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.51 (s, 8 H); IR 3400, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 650 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

15    **Example No. 78   5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-3-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 125-128°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.45 (m, 4 H), 7.43 - 7.28 (m, 7 H), 7.26 - 7.20 (m, 2 H), 7.14 - 7.09 (m, 2 H), 6.82 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.62 - 2.56 (m, 2 H), 2.41 - 2.36 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.45 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.40 - 1.31 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 654 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>43</sub>FN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

**Example No. 79   5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-3-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

25    Mp = 122-124°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.28 (m, 10 H), 7.26 - 7.20 (m, 2 H), 7.15 - 7.10 (m, 2 H), 6.88 - 6.76 (m, 2 H), 6.70 (s, 4 H), 5.22 (s, 2H), 5.16 (s, 2H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 3.92 - 3.86 (m, 2H), 2.82 - 2.65 (m, 2H), 2.65 - 2.55 (m, 4H), 2.15 (s, 3H), 1.60 - 1.4 (m, 8H); MS eI m/z 668 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>45</sub>FN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

30    **Example No. 80   5-Benzyloxy-2-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

35    Mp 86 - 87°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.49 (m, 2 H), 7.46 - 7.31 (m, 4 H), 7.24 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.15 - 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz), 7.00 - 6.93 (m, 2 H), 6.88 - 6.81 (m, 2 H), 6.75 (s, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 3.96 - 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.71 (s, 3 H), 2.59 - 2.55 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.37 (s, 4 H), 2.18 (s, 3 H), 1.49 - 1.42 (m, 4 H), 1.37 - 1.34 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 561 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

5

**Example No. 81** 5-Benzylloxy-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-trifluoromethoxy-phenyl)-1H-indole

Mp = 107 - 108°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.52 - 7.45 (m, 6 H), 7.41 - 7.26 (m, 4 H),  
10 7.17 - 7.16 (d, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz), 6.87 - 6.84 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, J = 6.4 Hz), 6.75  
- 6.68 (m, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 3.95 - 3.91 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.58 -  
2.54 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.38 - 2.34 (m, 4 H), 2.17 - 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.49 - 1.42  
(m, 4 H), 1.35 - 1.34 (d, 2 H, J = 4.9 Hz); IR 3400, 2900, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 615  
(M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>37</sub>F<sub>3</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

15

**Example No. 82** (2-{4-[5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-benzylloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethyl)-cyclohexyl-amine

Mp = 87-90°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46(dd, 4H, J= 6.9Hz, 0.6Hz), 7.42-7.27  
(m, 9H), 7.19 (d, 1H, J= 9Hz), 7.14-7.08 (m, 3H), 6.80 (dd, 1H, J= 6.4Hz, 2.4Hz),  
20 6.75- 6.70 (m, 4H), 5.15(s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.13(s, 2H), 3.89 (t, 2H, J= 5.6),  
2.84 (m, 2H), 2.48 (m, 1H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 1.80 ( m, 2H), 1.65 ( m, 2H), 1.61  
(m, 1H), 0.96-1.19 (m, 5H); MS eI m/Z 650 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>.

**Example No. 83** 5-Benzylloxy-2-(4-benzylloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-{4-methylpiperazin-1-yl}-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole

Mp = 88-91°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (m, 4H), 7.26-7.42 (m, 8H), 7.19  
(d, 1H, J= 8.8), 7.10-1.12 (m, 3H), 6.80 (q, 1H, J= 6.3Hz, 2.4Hz), 6.73 (m, 4H),  
5.15 (s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 3.94 (t, 2H, J= 5.9Hz), 2.59 (t, 2H), 2.42  
(m, 4H), 2.29 (m, 4H), 2.15 (s, 3H), 2.12 (s, 3H); MS eI m/Z 652 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd  
30 for C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>45</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

**Example No. 84** 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-5-benzylloxy-2-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole

Mp = 103 - 105°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 - 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.41 - 7.35  
35 (m, 7 H), 7.32 - 7.29 (t, 2 H, 7.0 Hz), 7.23 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.13 - 7.12  
(d, 1 H, J = 2.1 Hz), 7.06 - 7.03 (m, 1 H), 6.95 - 6.91 (m, 2 H), 6.83 - 6.80 (m, 1  
H), 6.75 - 6.73 (m, 4 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.02 (s, 2 H), 3.90 - 3.87 (t, 2

- 62 -

- 5 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.76 - 2.73 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.49 - 2.48 (m, 4 H), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.51 (s, 8 H); IR 3400, 2900  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS  $\text{EI}$   $m/z$  650 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{44}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$ .

Data and procedures for compounds From Table 11 (ER Receptor Data Table, *infra*) of Text

10

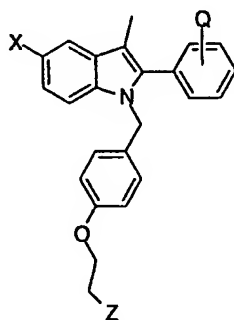














Table 7

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 85	H	H	
No. 86	H	4'-OH	




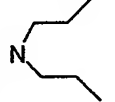
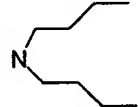
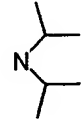


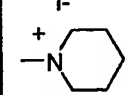

5

Table 7 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 87	OH	H	
No. 88	OMe	4'-OH	
No. 89	OH	4'-OMe	
No. 90	OMe	4'-OMe	
No. 91	OMe	4'-OMe	
No. 92	OH	4'-OEt	
No. 93	OH	4'-OEt	
No. 94	F	4'-OH	
No. 95	OH	H	
No. 96	OH	4'-OH	
No. 97	OH	4'-OH	
No. 98	OH	4'-OH	


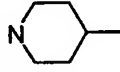

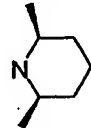
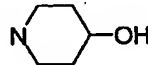
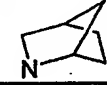





5

Table 7 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 99	OH	4'-OH	
No. 100	OH	4'-OH	
No. 101	OH	4'-OH	
No. 102	OH	4'-OH	
No. 103	OH	4'-OH	
No. 104	OH	4'-OH	
No. 105	OH	4'-OH	
No. 106	OH	4'-OH	
No. 107	OH	4'-OH	
No. 108	OH	4'-OH	

5














Table 7 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 109	OH	4'-OH	
No. 110	OH	4'-OH	
No. 111	OH	4'-OH	
No. 112	OH	4'-OH	
No. 113	OH	4'-OH	
No. 114	OH	4'-OH	
No. 115	OH	4'-OH	
No. 116	OH	4'-F	
No. 117	OH	4'-F	
No. 118	OH	3'-OMe,4'-OH	
No. 119	OH	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-	

- 66 -

5

Table 7 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 120	OH	4'-O-iPr	
No. 121	OH	4'-O-iPr	
No. 122	OH	4'-O-Cp	
No. 123	OH	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>	
No. 124	OH	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>	
No. 125	OH	4'-Cl	
No. 126	OH	2',4',-Dimethoxy	
No. 127	OH	3'-OH	
No. 128	OH	3'-OH	
No. 129	OH	4'-OH,3'-F	
No. 130	OH	4'-OH, 3'-F	
No. 131	OH	3'-OMe	
No. 132	OH	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>	



**Hydrogenation of Indoles Containing Benzyl Ether(s)**

### **Method 7**

**Illustrated For Example No. 97**

2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

A suspension of 10% Pd/C (1.1 g) in EtOH was treated with a solution of No. 63 (2.2 g, 3.4 mmol) in THF/EtOH. Cyclohexadiene (6.0 mL, 63 mmol) was added and the reaction was stirred for 48 hours. The catalyst was filtered through Celite and the reaction mixture was concentrated and chromatographed on silica gel using a gradient elution of MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1:19 to 1:10) to yield 0.8 g of the product as a white solid. Mp = 109-113°C; CHN calc'd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.5 H<sub>2</sub>O; <sup>1</sup>H NMR 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.95-3.93 (m, 2 H), 2.60-2.51 (m, 2 H), 2.39-2.38 (m, 4 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.46-1.45 (m, 4 H), 1.35-1.34 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3350 (br), 2920, 1620, 1510 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (EI) m/z 456.

Alternatively, the compounds may be dissolved in a THF/EtOH solution (or other appropriate solvent) and hydrogenated with H<sub>2</sub> and 10% Pd/C using either a balloon or Parr Hydrogenator. Either procedure is effective. In many of the examples, the compounds were made into acid addition salts. The procedure for the preparation of an HCl salt is given below (Method 8).

## 30 Method 8

1.0 g of Example No. 97 free base from the hydrogenation procedure above in a large test tube was dissolved in 20 mL of MeOH. This was treated with slow addition of 2.6 mL 1.0 N HCl and then 4.0 mL deionized water. The tube was partially opened to the atmosphere to encourage slow evaporation of the solvents. After about ten minutes, crystals began to appear and after 4 hours the solution was filtered and the solid crystals washed with water. The product was present as 0.42 g of white crystalline plates with a melting point of 184-185°C. The mother liquor yielded an

- 5 additional crop of 0.30 g of white solid with a melting point of 177-182°C. CHN calc'd for  $C_{29}H_{32}N_2O_3 + HCl + 1 H_2O$ .

Alternatively, the compounds can be made into quaternary ammonium salts. An example procedure for the synthesis of example No. 107 is given below (Method 9).

10

#### Method 9

**Example No. 107 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol methiodide**

- 15 0.8g of example No. 97 was dissolved in 18 mL THF and treated with 2 mL of methyl iodide. The solution was heated to reflux for an hour. The reaction was allowed to come to room temperature and the solids filtered to yield 0.72 g as a crystalline solid. Mp = 214 - 217°C, CHN calcd for  $C_{29}H_{32}N_2O_3 + CH_3I + 0.5 H_2O$ .

- 20 **Example No. 106 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-dimethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol methiodide** was prepared similarly to No. 106 except using No. 100 for starting material: Mp = 245 - 250°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 9.66 (s, 1 H), 8.69 (s, 1 H), 7.16 (d, 2 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.81 - 6.75 (m, 6H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.7 Hz),  
25 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.34 (m, 2 H), 3.70 (t, 2 H, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.11 (s, 9 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3250, 1500, 1250; MS eI m/z 416 (M+); CHN calcd for  $C_{26}H_{28}N_2O_3 + 1.09 CH_3I + 0.8 H_2O$ .

#### Physical Data for final, deprotected compounds

30

- The following compounds are either free bases, HCl salts or acetate salts. They were prepared according to the procedure outlined in method 7 using the appropriate benzyl ether for precursor. Where a compound from table 1 does not contain a free phenolic functionality, then it was unnecessary to debenzylate it and method 7 not  
35 applied. The physical data for these compounds (No. 85, No. 90- No. 91) is still presented below.

5 **Example No. 85** 4-{3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole} (HCl)

Mp = 134 - 137°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.33 (s, 1H), 7.56 - 7.38 (m, 6 H), 7.32 (d, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.14 - 7.0 (m, 2 H), 6.80 (s, 4 H), 5.24 (s, 2 H), 4.28 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.50 - 3.40 (m, 4 H), 3.0 - 2.95 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.80 - 1.60 (m, 5 H), 1.40 - 1.35 (m, 1 H); IR 3400, 2900, 1510, 1250 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (+) FAB m/z 425 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; CHN calcd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O + 1.0 HCl + 1.0 H<sub>2</sub>O.

**Example No. 86** 4-{3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-2-yl}-phenol hydrochloride (HCl)

15 Mp = 192 - 194°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO), 10.28 (s, 1 H), 9.75 (s, 1 H), 7.51 - 7.49 (m, 1H), 7.27 (dd, 1 H, J = 7.0 Hz, 0.7 Hz), 7.18 (d, 2 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.09 - 7.02 (m, 2 H), 6.86 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.80 (s, 4 H), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 4.28 (t, 2 H, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.50 - 3.35 (m, 4 H), 3.0 - 2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.20 (s, 3 H), 1.80 - 1.60 (m, 5 H), 1.40 - 1.30 (m, 1 H); IR 3400, 3100, 2600, 1500, 1225 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS ei m/z 440 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calc for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> + 1 HCl.

**Example No. 87** 3-Methyl-2-phenyl-1-[4-(2-piperidine-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)

25 Mp = 228-230°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR 10.1 (brs, 1 H), 8.76 (s, 1 H), 7.55 - 7.45 (m, 5 H), 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.85 - 6.80 (m, 5 H), 6.61 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 4.25 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.47-3.35 (m, 4 H), 2.96-2.87 (m, 2 H), 2.12 (s, 3 H), 1.75-1.65 (m, 5 H), 1.31-1.28 (m, 1 H); MS ei m/z 440 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> + 1 HCl + .33 H<sub>2</sub>O; IR (KBr) 3200, 2500, 1450, 1200 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

30

**Example No. 88** 4-{5-Methoxy-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indol-2-yl}-phenol

35 Mpt = 87-90°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.67 (s, 1 H), 7.16 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.16 (1 H buried), 6.98 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.85 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.69 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 2.63-2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.43-2.31 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.49-1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.39-

- 70 -

- 5 1.25 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400 (br), 2920, 1610, 1520  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 470; CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 0.1 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ .

**Example No. 89 2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

- 10 Mp = 188-189°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 8.70 (s, 1 H), 7.27 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.06 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.02 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.81 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.58 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 2.56 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.41-2.32 (m, 4 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.47-1.41 (m, 4 H), 1.34-1.31 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z  
15 470; CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 0.1 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ .

**Example No. 90 5-Methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole (HCL)**

- Mp = 188-191°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.35 (brs, 1 H), 7.27 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz),  
20 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.99 (d, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.82 - 6.78 (m, 4 H), 6.71 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 5.17 (s, 2 H), 4.31 - 4.22 (m, 2 H), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.43 - 3.36 (m, 4 H), 2.97 - 2.83 (m, 2 H), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.80 - 1.59 (m, 5 H), 1.41 - 1.26 (m, 1 H); IR (KBr) 2920, 1450, 1250  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 484 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calc for  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 1 \text{ HCL}$ .

- 25 **Example No. 91 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-5-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole (HCL)**

- Mp = 161-163°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.65 (brs, 1 H), 7.27 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.99 (d, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.82 - 6.77 (m, 4 H), 6.71 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.5 Hz),  
30 5.17 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (m, 2 H), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.44 - 3.30 (m, 4 H), 3.17 (m, 2 H), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.82 - 1.77 (m, 4 H), 1.63 - 1.48 (m, 4 H); MS eI m/z 499 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calc for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 1 \text{ HCL}$ .

- 35 **Example No. 92 2-(4-Ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 173-175°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 8.69 (s, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (dd, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz, J = 2.0 Hz),

- 71 -

- 5 6.80 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4H), 6.59 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.5 J = 2.2),  
5.09 (s, 2H), 4.05 (q, 2 H, J = 7.03 Hz), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.62 - 2.56  
(m, 2H), 2.41 - 2.36 (m, 4 H), 2.09 (s, 3H), 1.45 - 1.41 (m, 4H), 1.38 - 1.30  
(m, 5H); MS el m/z 484 (M+); CHN calc for  $C_{31}H_{36}N_2O_3 + .25H_2O$ .
- 10 **Example No. 93** 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol  
Mp = 133-135°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 8.69 (s, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8Hz), 7.04  
(d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (dd, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz, J = 2.0 Hz),  
6.80 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2Hz), 6.73 (s, 4H), 6.59 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.5 Hz, J = 2.2 Hz),  
15 5.09 (s, 2H), 4.05 (q, 2H, J = 7.03 Hz), 3.90 (t, 2H, J = 6.1 Hz), 2.75 (t, 2H, J  
= 6.0 Hz), 2.62 - 2.58 (m, 4 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.58 - 1.44 (m, 8 H), 1.33  
(t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr) 2930, 1470, 1250  $CM^{-1}$ ; MS el m/z 498 (M+); CHN  
calc for  $C_{32}H_{38}N_2O_3$ .
- 20 **Example No. 94** 4-{5-Fluoro-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-2-yl}-phenol (HCl)  
Mp = 223-225°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 10.30 (br s, 1H), 7.27 - 7.23 (m, 2 H),  
7.17 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.88 - 6.79 (m, 7H), 5.20 (s, 2H), 4.28  
(t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.42 - 3.35 (m, 4 H), 3.00 - 2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H),  
25 1.78 - 1.70 (m, 4 H), 1.67 - 1.59 (m, 1 H), 1.40 - 1.26 (m, 1 H); MS el m/z 458  
(M+).
- Example No. 95** 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-phenyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)  
30 Mp = 203-204°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 10.50 (brs, 1 H), 8.80 (s, 1 H), 7.50 - 7.38  
(m, 5 H); 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8Hz), 6.83 - 6.77 (m, 5 H), 6.60 (d, 1 H, J = 6.6  
Hz), 5.15 (s, 2H), 4.26 (t, 2 H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.45 - 3.35 (m, 4 H), 3.21-3.10 (m,  
2 H), 2.12 (s, 3H), 1.85-1.75 (m, 4 H), 1.70 - 1.51 (m, 4 H); MS el m/z 454 (M+);  
CHN calc for  $C_{30}H_{34}N_2O_2 + 1 HCl$ .
- 35

5 **Example No. 96 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-pyrrolidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 105-110°C; CHN calc'd for  $C_{28}H_{30}N_2O_3 + 0.4 H_2O$ ;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 9.65 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 2 H), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6, 2.2 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.95 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.39-3.23 (m, 4 H), 2.80-2.75 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.67-1.64 (m, 4 H); IR (KBr) 3410 (br), 1620, 1510  $cm^{-1}$ ; MS (EI) m/z 442

15 **Example No. 97 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Mp = 168 - 171°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 10.11 (br s, 1 H), 9.70 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H); 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.85 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.80 - 6.77 (m, 5 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.26 (t, 2 H, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.48 - 3.30 (m, 4 H), 3.22 - 3.08 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.83 - 1.76 (m, 4 H), 1.67 - 1.48 (m, 4 H); IR (KBr) 3500 br, 3250 br, 2900, 1610; MS FAB m/z 471 (M+H<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for  $C_{30}H_{34}N_2O_3 + 2.5 H_2O + HCl$ .

**Example No. 98 Acetate Salt of Example No. 97**

Made by the precipitation of No. 97 free base from acetone and acetic acid.

25 Mp = 174 - 178°C

**Example No. 99 1-[4-(2-Azocan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 98 - 102°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 9.63 (s, 1 H), 8.68 (s, 1 H), 7.15 - 7.13 (m, 2 H), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.5 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 2 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 6.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.89 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.74 (t, 2 H, J = 5.4 Hz), 2.55 (bs, 4 H), 2.08 (s, 3 H), 1.55 (s, 2 H), 1.46 (s, 8 H); IR 3400, 2900, 1250  $cm^{-1}$ ; MS EI m/z 484 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for  $C_{31}H_{36}N_2O_3 + .30 H_2O$ .

5 **Example No. 100** 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-dimethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 95 - 105°C; IR (KBr) 3400 br, 2900, 1610  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS el m/z 416 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 0.5 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

10 **Example No. 101** 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-diethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 100-107°C; CHN calc'd for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 0.25 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, 2.2 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.95-3.85 (m, 2 H), 2.80-2.60 (m, 2 H), 2.58-2.40 (m, 4 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 0.93 (t, 6 H, J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr) 3410 (br), 2950, 1610, 1510  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS FAB 445 (M+H+).

20 **Example No. 102** 1-[4-(2-Dipropylamino-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 83 - 86°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.78 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.72 (m, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.2 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.88 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.80 - 2.63 (m, 2 H), 2.59 - 2.45 (m, 4 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.41 - 1.30 (m, 4 H), 0.79 (t, 6 H, J = 7.3 Hz); IR 3400, 2900, 1250; MS FAB m/z 473 [M+H+]; CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + .20 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

30 **Example No. 103** 1-[4-(2-Dibutylamino-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

Foam;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.63 (s, 1H), 8.66 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 4.2 Hz), 6.78 - 6.71 (m, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz J = 2.4 Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.88 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.68-2.62 (m, 2H), 2.42-2.34 (m, 4 H), 2.08 (s, 3 H), 1.38 - 1.19 (m, 8H), 0.82 (t, 6 H, J = 7.2 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400, 1450  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS el m/z 501 (M+).

5 **Example No. 104** 1-[4-(2-Diisopropylamino-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 96 - 102°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.77 - 6.69 (m, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.75 (t, 10 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.01 - 2.92 (m, 2 H), 2.67 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 0.93 (d, 12 H, 6.6 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400 br, 2940, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS FAB m/z 473 (M+H<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

15 **Example No. 105** 1-{4-[2-(Butyl-methyl-amino)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 102-107°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.60 (s, 1H), 8.67 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.82 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.78 (d, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.92 (t, 2H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.64-2.59 (m, 2 H), 2.38-2.29 (m, 2 H), 2.20 (br s, 3 H), 2.08 (s, 3 H), 1.40-1.31 (m, 2 H), 1.25-1.19 (m, 2 H), 0.83 (t, 3 H, 20 7.2 Hz); IR (KBr) 3420, 1460, 1230 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS EI m/z 638 (M<sup>+</sup>).

**Example No. 108** 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-{4-[2-(2-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-1H-indol-5-ol

25 Mp = 121 - 123°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.65 (s, 1 H), 8.68 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.97 - 3.86 (m, 2 H), 2.95 - 2.73 (m, 2 H), 2.62 - 2.53 (m, 1 H), 2.36 - 2.14 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.61 - 1.30 (m, 4 H), 1.28 - 1.09 (m, 2 H), 0.98 (d, 3 H, J = 5.1 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400, 2920, 2850, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>; CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O. 30

**Example No. 109** 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-{4-[2-(3-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-1H-indol-5-ol

35 Mp = 121 - 123°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (dd, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz, 1.4 Hz), 7.04 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 1.2 Hz), 6.84 (dd, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 1.7 Hz), 6.79 (s, 1 H), 6.79 (s, 4 H), 6.56



- 75 -

- 5 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 2.86 - 2.71 (m, 2 H), 2.63 - 2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.48 (s, 3 H), 1.92 - 1.79 (m, 2 H), 1.63 - 1.35 (m, 5 H), 0.79 (d, 3 H, J = 5.2 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400, 2910, 1625  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 0.25 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .
- 10 **Example No. 110** 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-{4-[2-(4-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)  
Mp = 154 - 162°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.00 (brs, 1 H), 9.71 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.85 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.83 - 6.77 (m, 4 H), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.51 - 3.35 (m, 4 H), 3.01 - 2.87 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.74 (d, 2 H, J = 13.4 Hz), 1.61 - 1.37 (m, 4 H), 0.88 (d, 3 H, J = 6.4 Hz); IR (KBr) 3410, 2910, 1620  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS EI m/z 470 (M+H+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + \text{HCl} + 2 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .
- 20 **Example No. 111** 1-{4-[2-(3,3-Dimethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol  
Mp = 100°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.65 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.60-2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.37-2.25 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 2.10-1.99 (m, 2 H), 1.46 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 1.13 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz), 0.86 (s, 6 H); MS EI m/z 484.
- 30 **Example No. 112** 1-{4-[2-((cis)-2,6-Dimethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol  
Mp = 114 - 121°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.62 (s, 1 H), 8.64 (s, 1 H), 7.11 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.01 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.81 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.76 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.72 - 6.66 (m, 4 H), 6.53 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.06 (s, 2 H), 3.86 - 3.72 (m, 2 H), 2.86 - 2.76 (m, 2 H), 2.43 - 2.35 (m, 2 H), 2.06 (s, 3 H), 1.78 - 1.59 (m, 3 H), 1.29 - 1.17 (m, 1 H), 1.12 - 0.92 (m, 8 H); IR (KBr) 3400 br, 2920, 1630  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS FAB m/z 485 (M+H+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 0.1 \text{acetone} + 0.75 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

5 **Example No. 113** 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-{4-[2-(4-hydroxy-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 80 - 90°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.66 (s, 1 H), 8.68 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (dd, 2 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 6.6 Hz), 6.78 (d, 1 H, 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 4.50 (d, 1 H, J = 4.2 Hz), 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 3.40 (m, 2 H), 2.72 (m, 2 H), 2.60 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 2.15-2.05 (m, 1 H), 1.75-1.63 (m, 2 H), 1.42 - 1.28 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900, 1250 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 472 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> + .11 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>.

15 **Example No. 114** (1S,4R)-1-{4-[2-(2-Aza-bicyclo [2.2.1] hept-2-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 125 - 130°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.65 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.13 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.5 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 2 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 6.6 Hz), 6.78 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.95 - 3.8 (m, 2 H), 2.90 - 2.70 (3 H), 2.30 - 2.20 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.70 - 1.60 (m, 1 H), 1.60 - 1.30 (m, 4 H), 1.25 - 1.15 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2950, 1500; MS (+) FAB m/z 469 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + .34 EtOAc.

25 **Example No. 115** 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-{4-[2-(1,3,3-trimethyl-6-aza-bicyclo[3.2.1]oct-6-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 98 - 100°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.75 - 6.69 (m, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.83 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.12 - 3.07 (m, 1 H), 2.94 - 2.87 (m, 1 H), 2.85 (d, 1 H, J = 9.2 Hz), 2.78 - 2.70 (m, 1 H), 2.17 (d, 1 H, J = 9.2 Hz), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.55 - 1.42 (m, 2 H), 1.29 (q, 2 H, J = 13.6 Hz), 1.14 (s, 3 H), 1.11 - 1.02 (m, 2 H), 0.96 (s, 3 H), 0.82 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3400 br, 2940, 2900, 1630 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS ESI m/z 525 (M+H<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

35 **Example No. 116** 2-(4-Fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidine-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)

Mp = 201 - 203°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.22 (s, 1 H), 8.78 (s, 1 H), 7.45 - 7.35

- 77 -

5 (m, 2 H), 7.34 - 7.25 (m, 2 H), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.90 - 6.70 (m, 5 H), 6.61 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (t, 2 H, 4.8 Hz), 3.50 - 3.34 (m, 4 H), 3.0 - 2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.80 (m, 5 H), 1.40 - 1.25 (m, 1 H); MS eI m/z 458 (M+); CHN calcd for  $C_{29}H_{31}FN_2O_2 + 1 HCl$ .

10 **Example No. 117 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 181 - 184°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 10.68 (s, 1 H), 8.80 (s, 1 H), 7.50 - 7.36 (m, 2 H), 7.34 - 7.26 (m, 2 H), 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.86 - 6.73 (m, 5 H), 6.63 (dd, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.5 Hz), 5.13 (s, 2H), 4.29 (t, 2 H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.50 - 3.30 (m, 4 H), 3.20 - 3.08 (m, 2 H), 2.11 (s, 3 H), 1.90 - 1.70 (m, 4 H), 1.68 - 1.45 (m, 4 H); IR (KBr) 3500, 3100, 2910, 1450, 1250  $cm^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 472 (M+); CHN calcd for  $C_{30}H_{33}FN_2O_2 + 1 HCl$ .

20 **Example No. 118 2-(3-Methoxy-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Mp = 161-163°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 10.12 (brs, 1H), 9.25 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1H), 7.05 (d, 1H, J = 8.5Hz), 6.85 - 6.79 (m, 8 H), 6.57 (dd, 1H, J = 8.5Hz, J = 2.2Hz), 5.13 (s, 2H), 4.27 (t, 2H, J = 5.0Hz), 3.64 (s, 3H), 3.44 - 3.37 (m, 4 H), 2.93 - 2.85 (m, 2H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 1.80 - 1.60 (m, 5 H), 1.40 - 1.25 (m, 1H); MS eI m/z 486 (M+); CHN calc for  $C_{30}H_{34}N_2O_4 + 1HCl + 1 H_2O$ ; IR (KBr) 3190, 1470, 1230  $cm^{-1}$ .

**Example No. 119 2-Benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCL)**

30 Mp = 122-125°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 9.80 (brs, 1 H), 8.73 (s, 1 H), 7.07 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.02 (d, 1 H, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.89 (d, 1 H, J = 1.7 Hz), 6.80 - 6.75 (m, 6 H), 6.58 (dd, 1 H, J = 6.4 Hz, J = 2.2Hz), 6.06 (s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 4.30 - 4.19 (m, 2 H), 3.51 - 3.30 (m, 4 H), 2.99-2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.81-1.59 (m, 5 H), 1.41-1.26 (m, 1 H); MS eI m/z 484(M+); CHN calc for  $C_{30}H_{32}N_2O_4 + HCl + .26 H_2O$ .

5 **Example No. 120** 2-(4-Isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)

Mp = 120 - 125°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.18 (s, 1 H), 8.73 (s, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.82 - 6.80 (m, 5 H), 6.59 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.67 - 4.61 (m, 1 H), 4.27 (t, 10 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.50 - 3.35 (m, 4 H), 3.0 - 2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.80 - 1.60 (m, 5 H), 1.40 - 1.25 (m, 7 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 3000, 1500, 1250; MS eI m/z 498 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>38</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 HCl + .70 H<sub>2</sub>O.

15 **Example No. 121** 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)

Mp = 120 - 125°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.36 (s, 1 H), 8.73 (s, 1 H), 7.26 - 7.23 (m, 2 H), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.01 - 6.98 (m, 2 H), 6.85 - 6.75 (m, 5 H), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.67 - 4.61 (m, 1 H), 4.27 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.50 - 3.30 (m, 4 H), 3.20 - 3.10 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.85 - 20 1.75 (m, 4 H), 1.65 - 1.50 (m, 4 H), 1.27 (d, 6 H, J = 6.1 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400, 1500, 1250; MS eI m/z 512 (M<sup>+</sup>); Calcd for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 HCl + .5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

**Example No. 122** 2-(4-Cyclopentyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

25 Mp = 121 - 135°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.80 (br s, 1 H), 8.72 (s, 1 H), 7.24 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.83 - 6.78 (m, 5 H), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 4.86 - 4.82 (m, 1 H), 4.25 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.50 - 3.38 (m, 4 H), 2.92 (q, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 2.11 (s, 3 H), 1.98 - 1.85 (m, 2 H), 1.81 - 1.56 (m, 11 H), 1.41 - 1.29 (m, 1 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2920, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 524 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

**Example No. 123** 3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-1H-indol-5-ol

35 Mp = 174°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.8 (s, 1 H), 7.82 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.59 (d, 2 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.86 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.75 - 6.68 (m, 4 H), 6.65 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.62

- 79 -

5 - 2.56 (m, 2 H), 2.42 - 2.32 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.48 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.39 - 1.29 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3410, 2910, 2850, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 508 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>31</sub>F<sub>3</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

10 **Example No. 124 3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-p-tolyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 162 - 164°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.70 (s, 1 H), 7.28 - 7.24 (m, 4 H), 7.07 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.81 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.58 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.45 - 2.30 (m, 7 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.48 - 1.35 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900, 1200; MS eI m/z 454 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>.

20 **Example No. 125 2-(4-Chloro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCL)**  
Mp = 161-164°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.12 (brs, 1H), 8.80 (s, 1H), 7.53 (d, 2H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.36 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.85-6.75 (m, 5H), 6.63 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 5.14 (s, 2H), 4.29-4.22 (m, 2H), 3.45-3.36 (m, 4H), 2.97 - 2.84 (m, 2H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 1.83 - 1.61 (m, 5H), 1.37 - 1.25 (m, 1H); MS eI m/z 475 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calc for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>ClN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> + HCL + .25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

25

**Example No. 126 2-(2,4-Dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**  
Mp = 85 - 92°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.62 (s, 1 H), 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.01 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.80 - 6.70 (m, 5 H), 6.69 (d, 1 H, 2.2 Hz), 6.59 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.5 Hz), 6.52 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 5.02 (d, 1 H, J = 6.5 Hz), 4.83 (d, 1 H, J = 6.3 Hz), 4.0 - 3.90 (m, 2 H), 3.80 (s, 3 H), 3.67 (s, 3 H), 2.65 - 2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.45 - 2.30 (m, 4 H), 2.0 (s, 3 H), 1.55 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.39 - 1.30 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900, 1520, 1250; MS eI m/z 500 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> + .05 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>.

35

5 **Example No. 127** 2-(3-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 115 - 118°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.57 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H), 7.27 - 7.23 (t, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.06 - 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.81 - 6.74 (m, 8 H), 6.59 - 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 3.94 - 3.91 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.57 - 2.54 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.36 (s, 4 H), 2.11 (s, 3 H), 1.45 - 1.41 (m, 4 H), 1.34 - 1.33 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 456 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 H<sub>2</sub>O.

15 **Example No. 128** 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(3-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-5-ol

Mp = 94 - 97°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.58 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H), 7.27 - 7.23 (t, 1 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.07 - 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 6.81 - 6.74 (m, 8 H), 6.59 - 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 3.9 (m, 2 H), 2.80 (s, 2 H), 2.65 (s, 4 H), 2.11 (s, 3 H), 1.54 - 1.50 (m, 8 H); IR 3400, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 470 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.75 H<sub>2</sub>O + 0.23 Ethyl Acetate.

**Example No. 129** 2-(3-Fluoro-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

25 Mp = 117-119°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.1 (s, 1H), 8.71 (s, 1H), 7.10 - 6.95 (m, 4 H), 6.80 (d, 1H, J = 2.2Hz), 6.74 (s, 4H), 6.59 (dd, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.5 Hz), 5.1 (s, 2H), 3.93 (t, 2H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.56 (t, 2H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.44 - 2.30 (m, 4H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.45 - 1.40 (m, 4H), 1.36 - 1.32 (m, 2H); MS eI m/Z 475 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>FN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

30 **Example No. 130** 2-(3-Fluoro-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

35 Mp = 88 - 91°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.10 (s, 1H), 8.71 (s, 1H), 7.12 - 6.94 (m, 4 H), 6.80 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.58 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.5 Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.91 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.76 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9), 2.62 - 2.60 (m, 4H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 1.70 - 1.40 (m, 8 H); MS eI m/Z 488 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>33</sub>FN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

5 **Example No. 131** **2-(3-Methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole-5-ol**

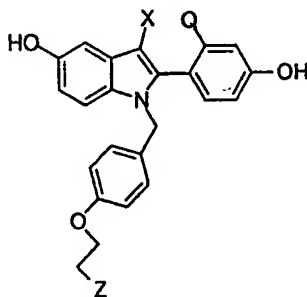
Mp = 120 - 123°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.76 (s, 1 H), 7.42 - 7.46 (t, 1 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.12 - 7.09 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 6.99 - 6.92 (m, 2 H), 6.86 - 6.83 (m, 2 H), 6.76 (s, 4 H), 6.63 - 6.60 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.1 Hz, J = 6.5 Hz), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 3.96 - 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.70 (s, 3 H), 2.59 - 2.55 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.37 (s, 4 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.49 - 1.44 (m, 4 H), 1.35 - 1.34 (m, 2 H); IR 3400, 2950, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 471 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

15 **Example No. 132** **3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-trifluoromethoxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-ol**

Mp = 122 - 125°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.80 (s, 1 H), 7.51 - 7.45 (m, 4 H), 7.17 - 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 6.85 - 6.84 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.75 - 6.69 (m, 4 H), 6.66 - 6.62 (m, 1 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 3.95 - 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.59 - 2.55 (t, 2 H, J = 5.6 Hz), 2.49 - 2.38 (m, 4 H), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.47 - 1.44 (m, 4 H), 1.36 - 1.34 (d, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz); IR 3400, 2900, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 525 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>31</sub>F<sub>3</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.








Synthetic procedures and physical data for compounds substituted with chloro, ethyl or cyano groups at the 3-position of the indole

25



5

Table 8

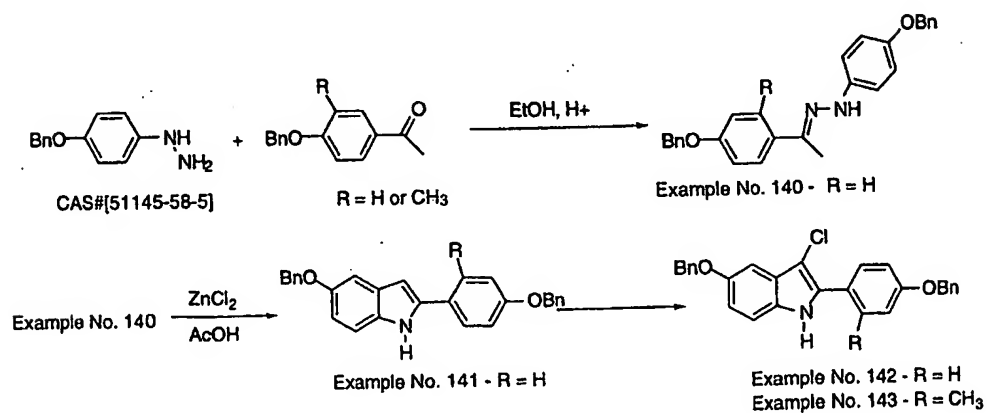
Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 133	Cl	H	
No. 134	Cl	H	
No. 135	Cl	H	
No. 136	Cl	CH <sub>3</sub>	
No. 137	Et	H	
No. 138	CN	H	
No. 139	CN	H	

### Synthesis of 3-chloro analogues No. 133- No. 136

10

#### Scheme 14

#### Synthesis of 3-chloroindole





5

**Example No. 140      Formation of hydrazone**

4-Benzyloxyphenylhydrazine CAS No. [51145-58-5] (50.0 g, 233.4 mmol) was mixed with 4-benzyloxyacetophenone CAS No. [54696-05-8] (63.0 g, 280.0 mmol) in pure ethanol (800 mL). A catalytic amount of acetic acid (5 drops) was added. The reaction was heated to reflux for 2.5 hrs. During the course of refluxing, the condensed product solidified out of the hot solution. The reaction was cooled down to rt. The desired product was collected by vacuum filtration as a light yellow solid (85 g, 86%). Mp = 165-174°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.91 (s, 1 H), 7.68 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.48 - 7.32 (m, 10 H), 7.12 (d, 2 H, J = 9 Hz), 7.00 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.88 (d, 2 H, J = 9.0 Hz). 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.01 (s, 2 H), 2.17 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 422 (M+).

15

**Example No. 141   Formation of indole from hydrazone: 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

20

A flask was charged with N-(4-Benzyloxy-phenyl)-N'-[1-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-ethylidene]-hydrazine (No. 140) (10.0 g, 23.7 mmol), ZnCl<sub>2</sub> (8.06 g, 59.17 mmol), acetic acid (70 mL). The reaction flask was heated to 105 °C for no more than 20 min. During the heating period, the reaction was monitored carefully by TLC for the disappearance of the starting material. The progress of the reaction could be shown as the product solidified out of the solution while heating. The reaction was then cooled to rt and more product crashed out was observed. The reaction content was poured into a separatory funnel containing ether (100 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (200 mL), which was shaken vigorously. The insoluble residue as the desired product stayed in the ether layer which was collected by vacuum filtration. The product was further purified by trituration in ether to give a light gray solid (4.4 g, 46%)

25

30

Mp = 202 - 204°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.24 (s, 1 H), 7.73 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.48 - 7.41(m, 4 H), 7.45 - 7.27 (m, 6 H), 7.25 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.12 - 7.04 (m, 3 H), 6.77 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.65 (d, 1 H, J = 1.5 Hz), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.08 (s, 2 H); IR 3420, 3000, 1625 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 405 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NO<sub>2</sub> + 0.40 H<sub>2</sub>O.

35

5

**Example No. 142 Chlorination of indole to render 5-Benzyloxy-3-chloro-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

A flask was charged with 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1H-indole No. 141 (8.0 g, 20.0 mmole) and  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (50ml). The reaction was cooled to  $0^\circ\text{C}$  and n-chlorosuccinimide (2.9 g, 22mmole) was added. The reaction was stirred at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  for 20min. The reaction was then washed with 10% sodium sulfite solution, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , and concentrated. To the resulting brown solid was added MeOH and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. The solid was filtered to give 6.8g of a tan solid (78%).  
Mp =  $157-160^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 11.5 (s, 1 H), 7.80 (d, 2 H,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 7.42 - 7.28 (m, 11 H), 7.17 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.7$  Hz), 7.01 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 6.88 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 5.17 (s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H); MS el m/z 439 (M+).

**Example No. 143 5-Benzyloxy-3-chloro-2-(2-methyl-4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

This indole synthesized analogously to indole No. 142 immediately preceding: Mp =  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 11.34 (s, 1 H), 7.48 - 7.44 (m, 4 H), 7.42 - 7.24 (m, 8 H), 7.02 (dd, 2 H,  $J = 9.3$  Hz,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.95 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.4$  Hz,  $J = 2.6$  Hz), 6.88 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 2.23 (s, 3 H); MS el m/z 453 (M+).

**Example No. 144 Alkylation of indole to give 4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

This procedure was performed analogously to that outlined for the synthesis of 3-methyl indole acetic acid ethyl esters outlined in method 3.  
Mp =  $90-94^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 4H,  $J = 7.8$  Hz), 7.41 - 7.26 (m, 9H), 7.14 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.7$  Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.91 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 9.0$  Hz,  $J = 2.5$  Hz), 6.80-6.74 (m, 4H), 5.24 (s, 2H), 5.15 (s, 2H), 5.14 (s, 2H), 4.66 (s, 2 H), 4.12 (q, 2H,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.16 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.5$  Hz); MS el m/z 631 (M+).

5

**Example No. 145** Reduction of No. 144 to render No. 145 2-{4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

- 10 This reaction was performed analogously to that outlined for the synthesis of 3-methyl indoles outlined in method 4. Compound was not purified or characterized, but used as obtained for the next step.

**Example No. 146** Bromination of No. 145 to render Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-chloro-1H-indole

- This reaction was performed analogously to that outlined for the synthesis of 3-methyl indoles outlined in method 5. Mp = 155-158°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 4 H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.41 - 7.25 (m, 9H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.91 (dd, 1 H, J = 9.0Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4H), 5.24 (s, 2 H), 5.15 (s, 2H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3Hz), 3.74 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz); MS EI m/z 651 (M+).

**Example No. 147** Substitution of No. 146 with piperidine to render 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole

- This reaction performed analogously to that outlined for the synthesis of 3-methyl indoles outlined in method 6, using piperidine to substitute the bromide.
- 30 Mp 96-98°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 4 H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.30 (m, 9 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.91 (dd, 1 H, J = 9.0Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.24 (s, 2H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.56 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.41-2.32 (m, 4 H), 1.48-1.39 (m, 4 H), 1.38-1.31 (m, 2 H).

35

5 **Example No. 148 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Reaction performed the same as above except the substituting amine used was hexamethyleneamine.

- 10 Mp = 94-97°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 4H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.42 - 7.30 (m, 9H), 7.14 (d, 2H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.91 (dd, 1H, J = 9.0 Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4H), 5.24 (s, 2H), 5.15 (s, 2H), 5.14 (s, 2H), 3.93 (t, 2H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.75 (t, 2H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.63-2.59 (m, 4H), 1.58-1.44 (m, 8H); MS EI m/z 671 (M+).

15

**Example No. 149 5-Benzyloxy-2-(2-methyl-4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Reactions to make this compound analogous to those used to make No. 147.

- 20 Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR(DMSO) 7.50 - 7.29 (m, 11H), 7.17 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.02 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.93 - 6.85 (m, 2H), 6.75 - 6.65 (m, 4H), 5.14 (s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.07 (m, 2H), 3.92 (t, 2H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.42 - 2.29 (m, 4H), 1.94 (s, 3H), 1.44 - 1.40 (m, 4H), 1.38 - 1.34 (m, 2H).

25

**Example No. 133 3-Chloro-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-pyrrolidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Synthesized as described for example No. 134.

- 30 Mp = 233-235°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.50 (s, 1H), 9.88 (s, 1H), 9.01 (s, 1H), 7.30 - 7.20 (m, 3H), 6.90 - 6.80 (m, 7H), 6.68 (dd, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 5.20 (s, 2H), 4.22 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.47 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.10 (bm, 4H), 1.90 (s, 4H); IR (KBr) 3400, 1625, 1475, 825 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS EI m/z 462 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>27</sub>ClN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1 HCl + .75 H<sub>2</sub>O.

5 **Example No. 134 Removal of benzyl ethers to render 3-Chloro-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Benzyl ethers were removed analogously to that procedure outlined for 3-methyl  
indoles outlined in method 7. This compound was then converted to the hydrochloride  
10 salt as described previously in method 8; Mp = 207-209°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.10  
(bs, 1 H), 9.86 (s, 1H), 9.07 (s, 1 H), 7.26 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.22 (d, 1 H, J =  
8.8 Hz), 6.87 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6Hz), 6.81 - 6.78 (m, 5 H), 6.65 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8  
Hz, J = 2.2 Hz), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (t, 2H, J = 5.0Hz), 3.44 - 3.37 (m, 4 H), 3.00 -  
2.85 (m, 2 H), 1.81-1.60 (m, 5H), 1.41 - 1.26 (m, 1 H); IR (KBr) 3350, 1470  
15 ,1250 CM<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 476 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calc for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>29</sub>ClN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + HCL + 1.5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

**Example No. 135 3-Chloro-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (Hcl)**

20 Synthesized as described for No. 134.  
Mp = 196-198°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.10 (brs, 1 H), 9.86 (s, 1H), 9.07 (s, 1 H),  
7.26 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.22 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 6.87 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6Hz),  
6.84 - 6.78 (m, 5 H), 6.65 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.2 Hz), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (t  
, 2H, J = 5.0Hz), 3.45-3.30 (m, 4 H), 3.21-3.10 (m, 2 H), 1.82-1.76 (m, 4 H),  
25 1.65 - 1.46 (m, 4 H); MS eI m/z 491 (M<sup>+</sup>);  
CHN calc for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>ClN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1 HCl + .37 H<sub>2</sub>O; IR (KBr) 3400, 3200, 1450, 1125

**Example No. 136 3-Chloro-2-(4-hydroxy-2-methyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

30 Synthesized as described for No. 134 except the compound was not converted into a  
salt.  
Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1H), 9.01 (s, 1H), 7.25  
(d, 1 H, J = 8.8Hz), 7.03 (d, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz),  
6.78 - 6.65 (m, 7 H), 5.06 - 4.92 (m, 2 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.62 - 2.57 (m  
35 , 2 H), 2.42 - 2.32 (m, 4 H), 1.90 (s, 3 H), 1.48- 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.40 - 1.32  
(m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 490 (M<sup>+</sup>); IR (KBr) 3430, 2900, 1450 cm<sup>-1</sup>; CHN calc for  
C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>ClN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 H<sub>2</sub>O.

5 Synthesis of 3-ethylindole analogue No. 137

This compound was synthesized in exact analogy to the example given for 3-methylindoles, supra, using methods a and 2-8. The only difference is that the starting material used is 4'-(benzyloxy)-Butyrophenone CAS No. [26945-71-1] instead of 4'-(benzyloxy)-Propiophenone. Data for intermediates is as follows.

Example No. 150 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-1H-indole

Mp = 101 - 108°C; MS eI m/z 433 (M+).

15

Example No. 151 {4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester

Mp = 72 - 75°C; MS eI m/z 625 (M+).

20 Example No. 152 2-{4-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol

Mp = 105 - 113 °C; MS eI m/z 583 (M+).

25 Example No. 153 Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromoethoxy)-benzyl]-3-ethyl-1H-indole

Mp = 140°C (decomp.); MS eI m/z 647, 645 (M+, Br present).

Example No. 154 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

30 Mp = 92 - 96°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.42 - 7.39 (m, 4 H), 7.36 - 7.30 (m, 2 H), 7.27 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.10 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 4 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.62 - 2.53 (m, 4 H), 2.40 - 2.33 (m, 4 H), 1.49 - 1.42 (m, 4 H), 1.37 - 1.30 (m, 2 H), 1.10 (t, 3 H, J = 7.2 Hz); MS eI m/z 650 (M+H+).

35

5 **Example No. 137** 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)

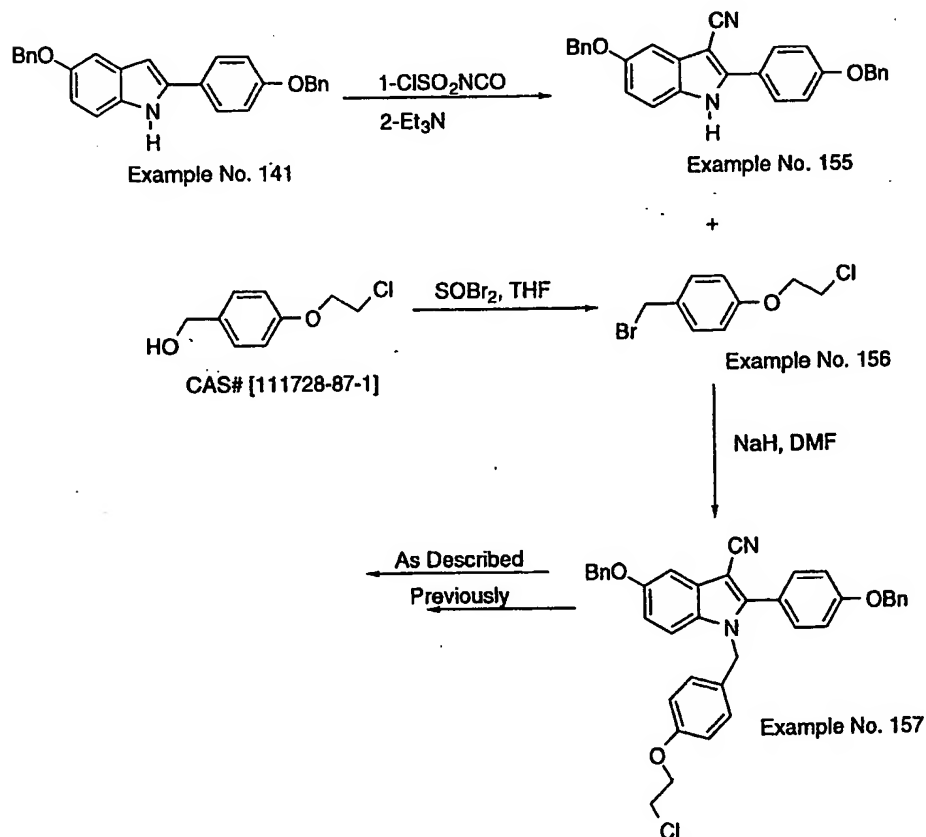
Mp = 160 - 164°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.78 (br s, 1 H), 9.69 (s, 1 H), 8.69 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.87 - 6.78 (m, 7 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 4.25 (t, 2 H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.45 - 3.38 (m, 5 H), 3.00 - 2.86 (m, 2 H), 2.57 - 2.50 (m, 2 H), 1.83 - 1.59 (m, 5 H), 1.41 - 1.28 (m, 1 H), 1.10 (t, 2 H, J = 7.5 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400 br, 3200 br, 2920, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS el m/z 470 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + HCl + 1.5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

10

**Scheme 15**

15

Synthesis of 3-cyanoindole analogues



- 90 -

5 **Example No. 155 5-Benzoyloxy-3-cyano-2- (4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

In a reaction flask 5-Benzoyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1H-indole No. 141 (5.90 g, 14.6 mmol) was mixed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (90 mL) was cooled down to 0°C (the  
10 starting material did not completely dissolve in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>). While stirring vigorously, a solution of chlorosulfonyl isocyanate (2.26 g, 16.0 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (25 mL) was added dropwise over a period of 45 min. The reaction was run at 0°C for 2 hrs while detected by TLC for the formation of the insoluble N-chlorosulfonylamide intermediate. After this period, Et<sub>3</sub>N (1.47 g, 14.6 mL) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (25 mL) was added dropwise  
15 over 45 min at 0°C. The insoluble residue became soluble in the reaction solvent as the Et<sub>3</sub>N addition was approaching completion. The reaction was let go for the additional 1 hr at 0°C and 2 hrs at rt. The progress of the reaction could be observed by the insoluble solid formation of the product as the reaction time went on. The solvent was stripped down and the solid residue purified by trituration with methanol to yield (4.0  
20 g, 63.8 %). Mp = 238 - 242°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 12.31 (s, 1 H), 7.88 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.48 (d, 4 H, J = 7.25 Hz), 7.55 - 7.30 (m, 7 H), 7.23 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.97 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 5.17 (s, 2 H); MS eI m/z 430 (M+).

25 **Example No. 156 4-(2-Chloroethoxy)benzylbromide**

To 4-(2-Chloroethoxy)benzylalcohol CAS No. [111728-87-1] (6.4 g, 34.31 mmol) in dioxane (100 mL) at 0°C was added slowly thionylbromide (7.13 g, 34.31 mmol). The reaction was run at 0°C after 5 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with  
30 ether (200 mL) and washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (1x30 mL) then NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (2x25 mL), and brine (30 mL). The organic extract was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (15% EtOAc/Hex) to yield 5.0 g (58%) of the desired product. Mp = 64-66°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.37 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.93 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 4.68 (s, 2 H), 4.24 (t, 2 H, J = 5.05 Hz), 3.93 (t, 2  
35 H, J = 5.27 Hz); MS eI m/z 248 (M+).



5 **Example No. 157 Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-chloro-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-cyano-1H-indole**

In a reaction flask the 3-cyano indole starting material No. 155 (2.86 g, 6.64 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (25 mL) at 0°C was added NaH (191.2 mg, 8 mmol) slowly. The reaction was stirred at 0°C for 20 min. In a separate reaction flask containing 4-(2-Chloroethoxy)benzylbromide No. 156 (1.81 g, 7.28 mmol) in DMF (15 mL) at 0°C, the above prepared indole anion solution taken up by syringe was added slowly. The reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 20 min and promoted to rt for 1 h. The reaction was quenched with a few drops of H<sub>2</sub>O. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (2x100 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (80 mL). The organic extract was washed with brine (80 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by trituration with ether to give the product as a white solid (2.80 g, 70.4%). Mp = 160-162°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.53 - 7.28 (m, 13 H), 7.23 (m, 3 H), 6.97 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 9.0 Hz), 6.86 - 6.78 (m, 4 H), 5.37 (s, 2 H), 5.18 (s, 4 H), 4.15 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.87 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz); MS eI m/z 598 (M<sup>+</sup>).

**Example No. 's 158 and 159**

Substitution of the chloro group with piperidine and hexamethylenamine was performed analogously to the procedure outlined in method 6 using No. 157 as a starting material, *supra*.

**Example No. 158 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-cyano-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 148 - 150 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.54 - 7.30 (m, 13 H), 7.25 - 7.18 (m, 3 H), 6.98 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 9.0 Hz), 6.84 - 6.74 (m, 4 H), 5.35 (s, 2 H), 5.17 (s, 4 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H, 5.9 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H, 5.7 Hz), 2.35 (bs, 4 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.38 - 1.25 (m, 2 H); IR 3400, 2910, 2250, 1250 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS FAB 648 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

5 **Example No. 159** **5-Benzoyloxy-2-(4-benzoyloxy-phenyl)-3-cyano-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.60 (br s, 1 H), 7.60 - 7.28 (m, 12 H), 7.25 - 7.16 (m, 3 H),  
6.97 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 9.0 Hz), 6.88 - 6.75 (m, 4 H), 5.35 (s, 2 H), 5.17 (s, 4  
10 H), 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.08-3.00 (m, 2 H), 2.77 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.63  
(t, 4 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 1.78 - 1.68 (m, 2 H), 1.60 - 1.40 (m, 4 H); MS el m/z 661 (M+).

**Examples No. 138 and No. 139**

Benzyl ethers were removed by hydrogen transfer using 1,4 cyclohexadiene and 10%  
15 Pd/C as described in method 7. Compounds were converted into their respective  
hydrochloride salts as described in method 8.

**Example No. 138** **5-Hydroxy-2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole-3-carbonitrile (HCl)**

20 Mp = 173 - 175°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.40 (s, 1 H), 10.12 (s, 1 H), 9.40 (s, 1 H),  
7.38 (m, 2 H), 7.30 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.02 - 6.90 (m, 3 H), 6.88 (s, 4 H), 6.75  
(dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 9 Hz), 5.33 (s, 2 H), 4.30 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.51 - 3.38  
(m, 4 H), 2.92 (m, 2 H), 1.85 - 1.73 (m, 4 H), 1.68 - 1.59 (m, 1 H), 1.26 - 1.21  
(m, 1 H); IR 3400, 2200, 1250 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS el m/z 467 (M+); CHN calcd for  
25 C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>29</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 HCl + 1.0 H<sub>2</sub>O.

**Example No. 139** **1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-5-hydroxy-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-3-carbonitrile (HCl)**

30 Mp = 160 - 163°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.22 (s, 1 H), 10.08 (s, 1 H), 9.35 (s, 1 H),  
7.40 - 7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.30 (d, 1 H, 8.8 Hz), 7.0 - 6.90 (m, 3 H), 6.87 (s, 4 H), 6.74  
(dd, 1 H, J = 2.41 Hz, 9 Hz), 5.33 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.50 - 3.30  
(m, 4 H), 3.20 (m, 2 H), 1.85 - 1.70 (m, 4 H), 1.65 - 1.50 (m, 4 H); IR 3300, 2200,  
1250 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS el m/z 481 (M+); CHN calc for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>31</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1 HCl + 1 H<sub>2</sub>O.

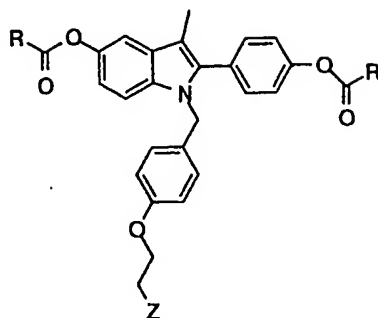
5 Esters of Indole No. 's 97 and 98

Table 9

Example No.	R	Z
No. 160	Et	
No. 161	t-Bu	
No. 162	t-Bu	

10

Method 9

**Example No. 162 Di-pivalate ester of 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

15 Example No. 97 free base was used as the starting material for this synthesis. No. 97 (1.0 g, 2.5 mmol) in 20 mL  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  was treated with diisopropylethylamine (0.7g, 6.3 mmol) and catalytic DMAP. The reaction was cooled to  $0^\circ\text{C}$  and treated with pivaloyl chloride (0.7 mL, 5.6 mmol) and allowed to come to rt and stirred overnight. The reaction was worked up by diluting with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and washing with water and

20 brine. After drying over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  the solution was concentrated and chromatographed on silica gel ( $\text{MeOH}/\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , 1:19) to yield the desired material as an orange foam (1.08 g). This material was then taken up in 15 mL ethyl acetate and treated with 2.5 mL of a 1M  $\text{HCl}/\text{Et}_2\text{O}$  solution. Hexane was added until the solution turned cloudy. The product precipitated out as the  $\text{HCl}$  salt. This material was recrystallized from ethyl

- 94 -

- 5 acetate/hexane to yield 0.42 g of pure No. 162: Mp = 182 - 185°C; CHN calcd for  $C_{39}H_{48}N_2O_5 + HCl + 0.25 H_2O$ .

**Example No. 160 Di-propionate of 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

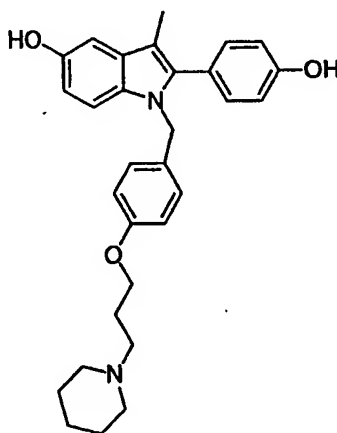
- 10 Compound was prepared analogously to example No. 162 except the starting material used was example No. 98 and the acylating agent used was propionyl chloride: Mp = 170.5 - 172°C; CHN calcd for  $C_{36}H_{42}N_2O_5 + HCl + 0.75 H_2O$ ; MS FAB 605 (M+Na)+.

15 **Example No. 161 Di-pivalate of 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

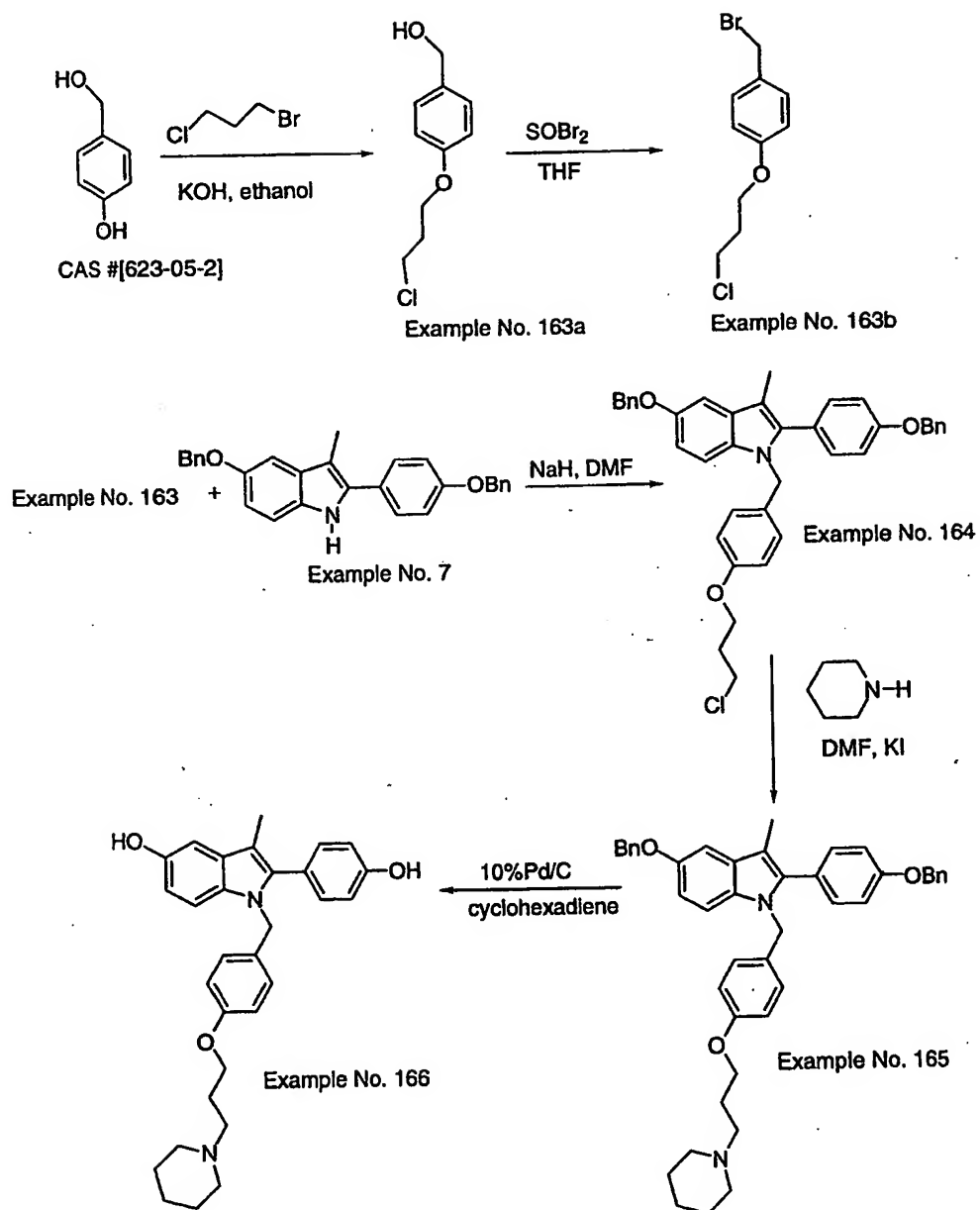
Compound was prepared analogously to example No. 162 except the starting material used was example No. 98: Mp = 143 - 151°C; CHN calcd for  $C_{40}H_{50}N_2O_5 + HCl + 0.75 H_2O$ .

20

**Experimental for example No. 166**



5 **Scheme 16**  
**Synthesis of No. 166**



5

**EXAMPLE No. 166****2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-{4-[3-(piperidin-1-yl)-propoxy]-benzyl}-1H-indol-5-ol**

The title compound was prepared according to Scheme 16 and the steps  
10 provided below:

**Method 11****Example No. 163a    4-(3-chloropropoxy)-benzyl alcohol**

15        A solution of 4-hydroxy benzyl alcohol CAS No. [623-05-2] (10g, 80.5 mmol) in ethanol (70 mL) was treated with 1, 3 bromochloro propane (16.0g, 100 mmol) and potassium hydroxide (5.0 g, 89 mmol) was refluxed for 2 hours. The solution was cooled and filtered and then the filtrate concentrated. The concentrate was taken up in ether and washed with water, brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. The  
20 material was chromatographed on silica gel using ethyl acetate/hexanes (3:7) to yield 11.6 g of the product as a white solid: Mp = 65°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.21 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.88 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.03 (t, 1 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 4.40 (d, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 4.05 (t, 2 H, J = 6.1 Hz), 3.77 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz); MS eI m/z 200.

**25    Method 12****Example No. 163b    4-(3-chloropropoxy)-benzyl bromide**

A solution consisting of 4-(3-chloropropoxy)-benzyl alcohol No. 162 (10.6 g, 52.8 mmol) in dioxane (0.125 l) was cooled to 0° C and treated with a dropwise  
30 addition of thionyl bromide (12.0 g, 58.0 mmol). After 10 minutes the reaction was complete. The dioxane was diluted with ethyl ether and washed with water, brine, and then dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The material was concentrated down to yield 15 g of an oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.36 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.92 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 4.68 (s, 2 H), 4.08 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.77 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz); MS (FAB) 266 (M+H<sup>+</sup>).

35

- 97 -

## 5 Method 13

Example No. 164 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(3-chloro-propoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole

A solution consisting of 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole No. 7 (6.5 g, 15.5 mmol) in DMF (60 mL) was cooled to 0°C and treated with addition of sodium hydride (0.68 g, 17.0 mmol) and stirred for 20 minutes. A solution of 4-(3-chloropropoxy)-benzyl bromide No. 163 in DMF (10 mL) was then added slowly. The reaction was allowed to come to rt and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction was poured into water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with water, brine and dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The concentrate was treated with methanol and 5 g of the desired product precipitated as a white solid with a melting point of 130-132°C.

## Method 14

20 Example No. 165 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(3-piperidin-1-yl-propoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole

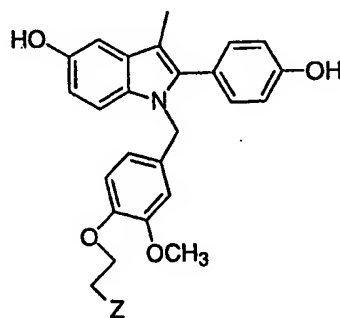
A solution of 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(3-chloro-propoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole No. 164 (3g, 5.1 mmol), potassium iodide (2.5 g, 15.3 mmol) and piperidine (3.0 mL, 30.6 mmol) were heated in DMF (30 mL) at 100°C for 18 hours. The reaction was worked up by pouring into water and extracting with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water, brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solution was concentrated to an oil and the product precipitated out by adding methanol. The product was obtained as a white solid: Mp = 104-106°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.38 (q, 4 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.36-7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.28 (d, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12-7.10 (m, 4 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.0 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.86 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz), 2.35-2.20 (m, 6 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.78-1.75 (m, 2 H), 1.47-1.42 (m, 4 H), 1.40-1.31 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 650.

35

## 5 Method 15

**Example No. 166** 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[3-(piperidin-1-yl)-propoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol



A solution of 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(3-piperidin-1-yl-  
10 propoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole No. 165 (2.35 g) in tetrahydrofuran (25 mL) and ethanol (25 mL) was added to 2.3 g of 10% palladium on carbon. Cyclohexadiene (10 mL) was added and the reaction allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 hours. The catalyst was filtered through celite and the reaction mixture was concentrated and chromatographed on silica gel using dichloromethane/methanol (4:1) to elute the  
15 product (0.8 g) as a white foam: Mp = 125-130°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR 9.68 (s, 1 H), 8.70 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.85 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.80 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.74 (d, 4 H, J = 2.6 Hz), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6, 2.2 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.88 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz), 3.60-3.15 (m, 2 H), 2.62-2.38 (m, 4 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.92-1.78 (m, 2 H), 1.55-1.43 (m, 4 H), 1.42-1.30 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400 (br), 2900, 1620, 1515 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS el  
20 m/z 470.

Synthesis of No. 167 and No. 168



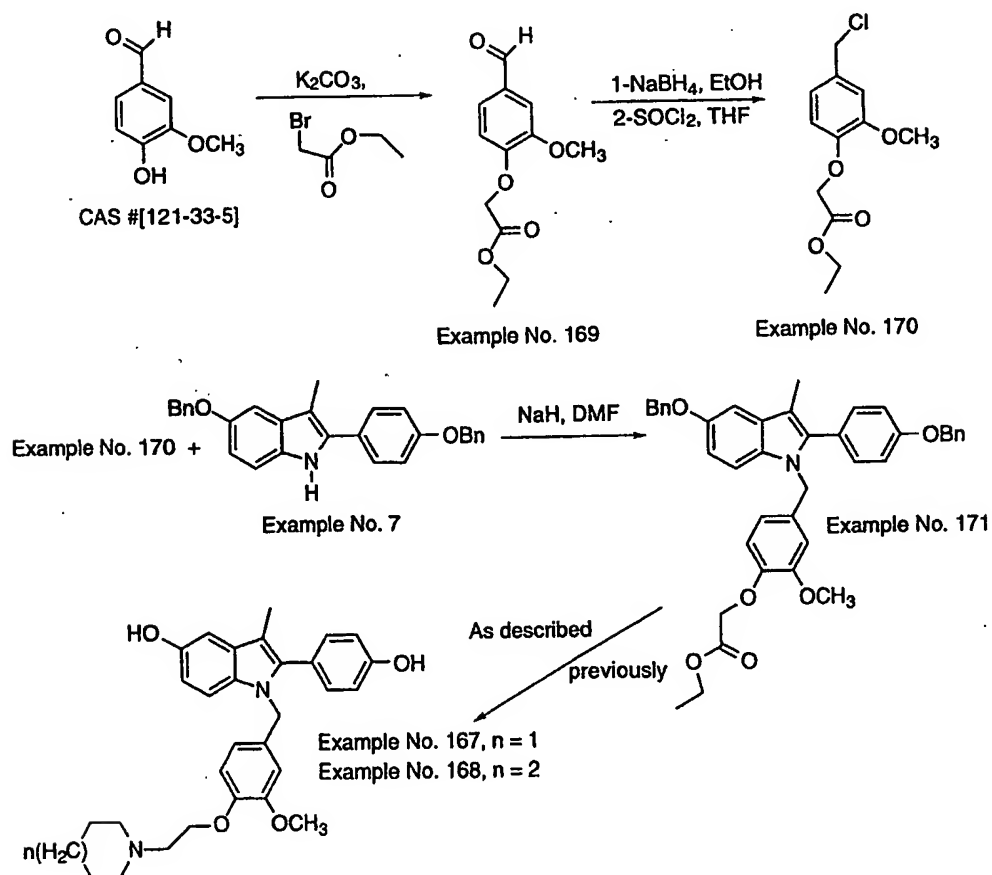
5

Table 10

Example No.	Z
No. 167	
No. 168	

## Scheme 17

10

Synthetic scheme for examples No. 167 and No. 168

5

Synthesis of example No. 1672-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

10

Example No. 169 (4-Formyl-2-methoxy-phenoxy)-acetic acid ethyl ester

A flask containing vanillin (20g, 0.13 mol), ethyl bromoacetate (28.4g, 0.17 mol) and potassium carbonate (32.7 g, 0.24 mol) and acetone 200 mL were heated to reflux for 3 hours. The reaction was allowed to come to rt. The acetone was stripped off and the residue partitioned between water and ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with  
15 brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. The organic layer was concentrated and the solid triturated with hexanes to yield 28.4 grams of example No. 169.

Mp = 56 - 59 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.83 (s, 1 H), 7.50 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 8.3 Hz), 7.42 (d, 1 H, J = 1.7 Hz), 7.07 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 4.91 (s, 2 H), 4.16 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 3.84 (s, 3 H), 1.20 (t, 3 H, J = 7.1 Hz); MS el m/z 238 (M+);

20 CHN calcd for C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>14</sub>O<sub>5</sub>.Example No. 170 (4-Chloromethyl-2-methoxy-phenoxy)-acetic acid ethyl ester

A solution of example No. 169 (28.8g, 0.119 mol) in 600 mL of EtOH/THF(1:1) was  
25 treated with sodium borohydride (2.25 g, 0.06 mol) at 0°C and stirred for 45 minutes. The solvents were evaporated and the reaction mixture diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with 1N HCl solution. The product thus obtained (14.2 g, 0.059 mol) as an oil was dissolved in 140 mL of THF and cooled to 0°C. This solution was then treated with dropwise addition of thionyl chloride (7.38g, 0.062 mol) at )°C. After 1 hour the  
30 reaction was poured into 400 mL of water and extracted with ether. The ether layer was washed with a sodium bicarbonate solution and dried over magnesium sulfate. This was concentrated and chromatographed by silica gel chromatography using ethyl acetate/hexanes (1:9). The product was obtained as 10.5 g of a white solid. Mp = 64 - 66°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.06 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.91  
35 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 6.83 (d, 1 H, J = 2.1 Hz), 4.75 (s, 2 H), 4.70 (s, 2 H), 4.13 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 3.77 (s, 3 H), 1.19 (t, 3 H, J = 7.1 Hz); MS el m/z 258 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>15</sub>ClO<sub>4</sub>.

5 **Example No. 171 2-Methoxy-4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Alkylation of the indole No. 7 was performed as described previously in Method No. 3 using example No. 170 as the electrophile.

Mp = 120 - 123°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H),  
10 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52  
(d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10  
(s, 2 H), 4.61 (s, 2 H), 4.10 (q, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.58 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.15  
(t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); MS eI m/z 641 (M+).

15 **Example No. 172 2-[2-Methoxy-4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol**

Reduction of the ester No. 171 was performed as described previously in Method 4.

Mp = 86 - 90°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80  
(dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz),  
20 6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.76  
(t, 1 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.83 (t, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.63 (q, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.56  
(s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 599 (M+).

25 **Example No. 173 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Conversion of the alcohol of example No. 172 to the bromide was performed analogously to that described in Method 5.

Mp = 150 - 152°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H),  
6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52  
30 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10  
(s, 2 H), 4.15 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.70 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.58 (s, 3 H), 2.15  
(s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 661 (M+).

35 **Example No. 174 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[3-Methoxy-4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Substitution of the bromide with piperidine was performed as described previously in Method 6.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80

- 5 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.90 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.55 (s, 3 H), 2.62 - 2.50 (bs, 2 H), 2.45 - 2.30 (bs, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.40 - 1.35 (m, 2 H); MS FAB m/z 667 (M+H+).

10 **Example No. 175 5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[2-Methoxy-4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Reaction performed exactly as for No. 174 except hexamethyleneamine was used to displace the bromide in place of piperidine.

- Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.90 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.55 (s, 3 H), 2.85 - 2.70 (bs, 2 H), 2.70 - 2.55 (s, 4 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.60 - 1.15 (m, 8 H); MS FAB m/z 681 (M+H+)

20 **Example No. 167 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Compound No. 173 was hydrogenated by transfer hydrogenation as described previously in Method 7. Compound was isolated as the hydrochloride salt by dissolving in ether and treating with 1.2 equivalents of 1N ether/HCl solution (this is a variation of method 8).

- Mp = 123 - 127 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.20 (bs, 1 H), 9.72 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H), 7.17 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.87 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (m, 2 H), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.55 (d, 1 H, J = 1.7 Hz), 6.33 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.7 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.23 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.60 (s, 3 H), 3.45 (m, 2 H), 3.35 (m, 2 H), 2.95 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.70 (m, 5 H), 1.35 (m, 1 H); IR 3500, 1500, 1275 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (+) FAB m/z 487 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>; CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> + 1 HCl + 1.0 H<sub>2</sub>O.

35 **Example No. 168 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Prepared in the same way as that described for example No. 167.

- 103 -

- 5 Mp = 142 - 146 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.36 (s, 1 H), 9.72 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H), 7.18 (d, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.87 (d, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 6.82 (d, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.55 (d, 1 H, J = 1.8 Hz), 6.33 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.5 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.24 (t, 2 H, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.60 (s, 3 H), 3.40 (m, 4 H), 3.20 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.75 (m, 4 H), 1.55 (m, 4 H); IR (KBr) 3300, 1500, 1270, 1200 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (+) FAB m/z 501 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>; CHN calcd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> + 1.0 HCl + 0.12 CH<sub>3</sub>OH.
- 10

### **Biological Data**

#### **15 Method 16**

##### **In vitro estrogen receptor binding assay**

##### **Receptor preparation**

- 20 CHO cells overexpressing the estrogen receptor were grown in 150 mm<sup>2</sup> dishes in DMEM + 10% dextran coated charcoal, stripped fetal bovine serum. The plates were washed twice with PBS and once with 10mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.4, 1mM EDTA. Cells were harvested by scraping the surface and then the cell suspension was placed on ice. Cells were disrupted with a hand-held motorized tissue grinder using two, 10-second
- 25 bursts. The crude preparation was centrifuged at 12,000g for 20 minutes followed by a 60 minute spin at 100,000g to produce a ribosome free cytosol. The cytosol was then frozen and stored at -80°C. Protein concentration of the cytosol was estimated using the BCA assay with reference standard protein.

#### **30 Binding assay conditions**

- The competition assay was performed in a 96-well plate (polystyrene\*) which binds <2.0% of the total input [<sup>3</sup>H]-17β-estradiol and each data point was gathered in triplicate. 100uG/100uL of the receptor preparation was aliquoted per well. A
- 35 saturating dose of 2.5 nM [<sup>3</sup>H]17β-estradiol + competitor (or buffer) in a 50 uL volume was added in the preliminary competition when 100x and 500x competitor were evaluated, only 0.8 nM [<sup>3</sup>H] 17β-estradiol was used. The plate was incubated at room

- 104 -

5 temperature for 2.5 h. At the end of this incubation period 150 uL of ice-cold dextran  
coated charcoal (5% activated charcoal coated with 0.05% 69K dextran) was added to  
each well and the plate was immediately centrifuged at 99g for 5 minutes at 4°C. 200  
uL of the supernatant solution was then removed for scintillation counting. Samples  
were counted to 2% or 10 minutes, whichever occurs first. Because polystyrene  
10 absorbs a small amount of [<sup>3</sup>H]17β-estradiol, wells containing radioactivity and  
cytosol, but not processed with charcoal were included to quantitate amounts of  
available isotope. Also, wells containing radioactivity but no cytosol were processed  
with charcoal to estimate unremovable DPM of [<sup>3</sup>H] 17β-estradiol. Corning No.  
25880-96, 96-well plates were used because they have proven to bind the least amount  
15 of estradiol.

#### Analysis of results

20 Counts per minute (CPM) of radioactivity were automatically converted to  
disintegrated per minute (DPM) by the Beckman LS 7500 Scintillation Counter using a  
set of quenched standards to generate a H No. for each sample. To calculate the % of  
estradiol binding in the presence of 100 or fold 500 fold competitor the following  
formula was applied:

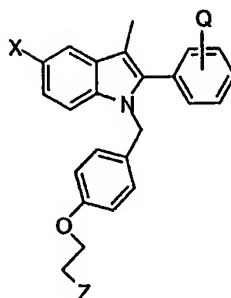
25 
$$((\text{DPM sample} - \text{DPM not removed by charcoal}) / (\text{DPM estradiol} - \text{DPM not removed by charcoal})) \times 100\% = \% \text{ of estradiol binding}$$

30 For the generation of IC<sub>50</sub> curves, % binding is plotted vs compound. IC<sub>50</sub>'s  
are generated for compounds that show >30% competition at 500x competitor  
concentration. For a description of these methods, see Hulme, E.C., ed. 1992.  
Receptor-Ligand Interactions: A Practical Approach. IRL Press, New York.(see  
especially chapter 8).

5

Table 11

## Estrogen Receptor Binding
















10

Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> 's. $\mu$ M
No. 85	H	H		0.45
No. 86	H	4'-OH		0.12
No. 87	OH	H		0.030
No. 88	OMe	4'-OH		0.35
No. 89	OH	4'-OMe		0.30
No. 90	OMe	4'-OMe		0.60
No. 91	OMe	4'-OMe		0.52
No. 92	OH	4'-OEt		0.062

5



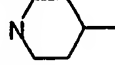

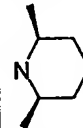
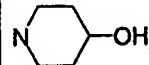

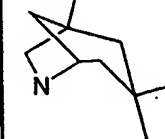




Table 11 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> 's $\mu$ M
No. 93	OH	4'-OEt		0.090
No. 94	F	4'-OH		0.20
No. 97	OH	4'-OH		0.060
No. 98	OH	4'-OH		0.050
No. 99	OH	4'-OH		0.03
No. 100	OH	4'-OH		0.06
No. 101	OH	4'-OH		0.04
No. 102	OH	4'-OH		0.08
No. 103	OH	4'-OH		0.2
No. 104	OH	4'-OH		0.1
No. 105	OH	4'-OH		0.028
No. 106	OH	4'-OH		0.1
No. 107	OH	4'-OH		0.06
















5

Table 11 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> 's $\mu$ M
No. 108	OH	4'-OH		0.02
No. 109	OH	4'-OH		0.17
No. 110	OH	4'-OH		0.037
No. 111	OH	4'-OH		0.15
No. 112	OH	4'-OH		0.07
No. 113	OH	4'-OH		0.047
No. 114	OH	4'-OH		0.001
No. 115	OH	4'-OH		0.15
No. 116	OH	4'-Fl		0.04
No. 117	OH	4'-Fl		0.10
No. 118	OH	3'-OMe,4'-OH		N/A
No. 119	OH	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-		0.070

5

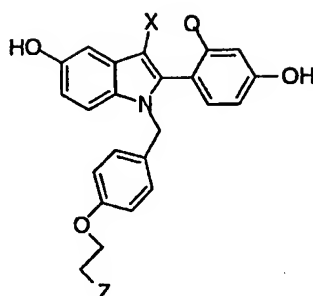
Table 11 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
No. 120	OH	4'-O-iPr		0.10
No. 121	OH	4'-O-iPr		0.080
No. 122	OH	4'-O-Cp		0.080
No. 123	OH	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>		0.17
No. 124	OH	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>		0.11
No. 125	OH	4'-Cl		0.11
No. 126	OH	2',4',-Dimethoxy		N/A
No. 127	OH	3'-OH		0.019
No. 128	OH	3'-OH		0.009
No. 129	OH	4'-OH,3'-Fl		0.0055
No. 130	OH	4'-OH, 3'-Fl		0.013
No. 131	OH	3'-OMe		0.12
No. 132	OH	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>		0.05








5

Table 12

## Estrogen Receptor Binding



10

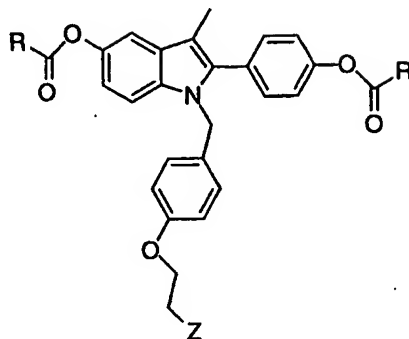
Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> 's $\mu$ M
No. 133	Cl	H		0.004
No. 134	Cl	H		0.024
No. 135	Cl	H		0.029
No. 136	Cl	CH <sub>3</sub>		0.013
No. 137	Et	H		0.15
No. 138	CN	H		0.011
No. 139	CN	H		0.023

- 110 -

5

Table 13

## Estrogen Receptor Binding

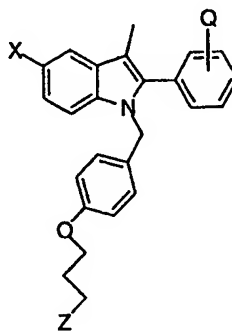


10

Example No.	R	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> 's uM
No. 160	Et		N/A
No. 161	t-Bu		N/A
No. 162	t-Bu		Does not Bind


Table 14

## 15 Estrogen Receptor Binding



20

- 111 -

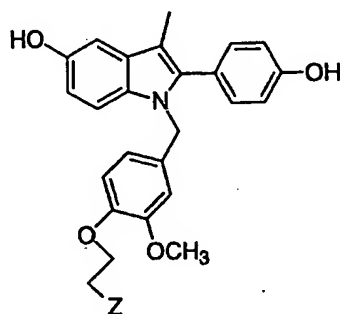
Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> 's $\mu$ M
No. 166	OH	4'-OH		0.099



5

Table 15

## Estrogen Receptor Binding

10



Example No.	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> 's $\mu$ M
No. 167		0.08
No. 168		0.057

15

## Method 17

Ishikawa Cell Alkaline Phosphatase Assay

20

Cell Maintenance and Treatment:

Ishikawa cells were maintained in DMEM/F12 (50%:50%) containing phenol red + 10% fetal bovine serum and the medium was supplemented with 2 mM Glutamax, 1% Pen/Strap and 1 mM sodium pyruvate. Five days prior to the beginning of each experiment (treatment of cells) the medium was changed to phenol red-free

25

- 112 -

5 DMEM/F12 + 10% dextran coated charcoal stripped serum. On the day before treatment, cells were harvested using 0.5% trypsin/EDTA and plated at a density of  $5 \times 10^4$  cells/well in 96-well tissue culture plates. Test compounds were dosed at  $10^{-6}$ ,  $10^{-7}$  and  $10^{-8}$  M in addition to  $10^{-6}$  M (compound) +  $10^{-9}$  M  $17\beta$ - estradiol to evaluate the ability of the compounds to function as antiestrogens. Cells were treated for 48 h prior  
10 to assay. Each 96-well plate contained a  $17\beta$ -estradiol control. Sample population for at each dose was n=8.

**Alkaline Phosphatase Assay:**

15 At the end of 48h the media is aspirated and cells are washed three times with phosphate buffered saline (PBS). 50 $\mu$ L of lysis buffer (0.1 M Tris-HCl, pH 9.8, 0.2% Triton X-100) is added to each well. Plates are placed at -80°C for a minimum of 15 minutes. Plates are thawed at 37°C followed by the addition of 150 $\mu$ L of 0.1 M Tris-HCl, pH 9.8, containing 4 mM para-nitrophenylphosphate (pNPP) to each well  
20 (final concentration, 3 mM pNPP).

Absorbance and slope calculations were made using the KineticCalc Application program (Bio-Tek Instruments, Inc., Winooski, VT). Results are expressed as the mean  $\pm$  S.D. of the rate of enzyme reaction (slope) averaged over the linear portion of  
25 the kinetic reaction curve (optical density readings every 5 minutes for 30 minutes absorbance reading). Results for compounds are summarized as percent of response related to 1 nM  $17\beta$ -estradiol.

Various compounds were assayed for estrogenic activity by the alkaline  
30 phosphatase method and corresponding ED50 values (95% C.I.) were calculated. The four listed in the following were used as reference standards:

	$17\beta$ -estradiol	0.03 nM
	$17\alpha$ -estradiol	1.42 nM
35	estriol	0.13 nM
	estrone	0.36 nM

- 113 -

- 5 A description of these methods is described by Holinka, C.F., Hata, H., Kuramoto, H. and Gulpide, E. (1986) Effects of steroid hormones and antisteroids on alkaline phosphatase activity in human endometrial cancer cells (Ishikawa Line). Cancer Research, 46:2771-2774, and by Littlefield, B.A., Gulpide, E., Markiewicz, L., McKinley, B. and Hochberg, R.B. (1990) A simple and sensitive microtiter plate  
 10 estrogen bioassay based on stimulation alkaline phosphatase in Ishikawa cells; Estrogen action of D5 adrenal steroids. Endocrinology, 6:2757-2762.

#### Ishikawa Alkaline Phosphatase Assay

15	<u>Compound</u>	<u>% Activation</u>
	17 $\beta$ -estradiol	100% activity
	tamoxifen	0% activity (45% with 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol)
	raloxifene	5% activity (5% with 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol)
	Example No. 98	1% activity (1% with 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol)

20

Method No. 18

#### 2X VIT ERE Infection Assay

#### 25 Cell Maintenance and Treatment

- Chinese Hamster Ovary cells (CHO) which had been stably transfected with the human estrogen receptor were maintained in DMEM + 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS). 48h prior to treatment the growth medium was replaced with DMEM lacking phenol red  
 30 + 10% dextran coated charcoal stripped FBS (treatment medium). Cells were plated at a density of 5000 cells/well in 96-well plates containing 200  $\mu$ L of medium/well.

#### Calcium Phosphate Transfection

- 35 Reporter DNA (Promega plasmid pGL2 containing two tandem copies of the vitellogenin ERE in front of the minimal thymidine kinase promoter driving the luciferase gene) was combined with the B-galactosidase expression plasmid pCH110 (Pharmacia) and carrier DNA (pTZ18U) in the following ratio:

- 114 -

5

10uG of reporter DNA  
5uG of pCH110DNA  
5 uG of pTZ18U  
20 uG of DNA/1 mL of transfection solution

10

The DNA (20uG) was dissolved in 500 uL of 250 mM sterile  $\text{CaCl}_2$  and added dropwise to 500 uL of 2 X HeBS (0.28 M NaCl, 50 mM HEPES, 1.5 mM  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ , pH 7.05) and incubated at room temperature for 20 minutes. 20 uL of this mixture was added to each well of cells and remained on the cells for 16 h. At the end of this incubation the precipitate was removed, the cells were washed with media, fresh treatment media was replaced and the cells were treated with either vehicle, 1 nM  $17\beta$ -estradiol, 1uM compound or 1 uM compound + 1 nM  $17\beta$ -estradiol (tests for estrogen antagonism). Each treatment condition was performed on 8 wells (n=8) which were incubated for 24 h prior to the luciferase assay.

20

#### Luciferase Assay

After 24h exposure to compounds, the media was removed and each well washed with 2 X with 125 uL of PBS lacking  $\text{Mg}^{++}$  and  $\text{Ca}^{++}$ . After removing the PBS, 25 uL of Promega lysis buffer was added to each well and allowed to stand at room temperature for 15 min, followed by 15 min at  $-80^\circ\text{C}$  and 15 min at  $37^\circ\text{C}$ . 20 uL of lysate was transferred to an opaque 96 well plate for luciferase activity evaluation and the remaining lysate (5 uL) was used for the B-galactosidase activity evaluation (normalize transfection). The luciferan substrate (Promega) was added in 100 uL aliquots to each well automatically by the luminometer and the light produced (relative light units) was read 10 seconds after addition.

#### Infection Luciferase Assay (Standards)

35	<u>Compound</u>	<u>% Activation</u>
	$17\beta$ -estradiol	100% activity
	estriol	38% activity
	tamoxifen	0% activity (10% with 1 nM $17\beta$ -estradiol)



- 115 -

5 raloxifene 0% activity (0% with 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol)

### B-Galactosidase Assay

10 To the remaining 5 uL of lysate 45 uL of PBS was added. Then 50 uL of  
Promega B-galactosidase 2X assay buffer was added, mixed well and incubated at  
37°C for 1 hour. A plate containing a standard curve (0.1 to 1.5 milliunits in triplicate)  
was set up for each experimental run. The plates were analyzed on a Molecular Devices  
spectrophotometric plate reader at 410 nm. The optical densities for the unknown were  
15 converted to milliunits of activity by mathematical extrapolation from the standard  
curve.

### Analysis of Results

20 The luciferase data was generated as relative light units (RLUs) accumulated  
during a 10 second measurement and automatically transferred to a JMP (SAS Inc) file  
where background RLUs were subtracted. The B-galactosidase values were  
automatically imported into the file and these values were divided into the RLUs to  
normalize the data. The mean and standard deviations were determined from a n=8 for  
each treatment. Compounds activity was compared to 17 $\beta$ -estradiol for each plate.  
25 Percentage of activity as compared to 17 $\beta$ -estradiol was calculated using the formula  
 $\% = ((\text{Estradiol-control}) / (\text{compound value})) \times 100$ . These techniques are described by  
Tzukerman, M.T., Esty, A., Santiso-Mere, D., Danielian, P., Parker, M.G., Stein,  
R.B., Pike, J.W. and McDonnel, D.P. (1994). Human estrogen receptor  
transactivational capacity was determined by both cellular and promoter context and  
30 mediated by two functionally distinct intramolecular regions (see Molecular  
Endocrinology, 8:21-30).

- 116 -

5

Table 16

## Infection Luciferase Activity

Example No.	1 $\mu$ M	1 $\mu$ M + 17 $\beta$ estradiol
No. 85	-2	43
No. 86	-5	2
No. 87	0	0
No. 88	4	44
No. 89	16	18
No. 90	3	58
No. 91	-3	56
No. 92	-4	-2
No. 93	-3	-2
No. 94	-5	15
No. 95	-4	-4
No. 96	12	8
No. 97	-4	-5
No. 98	5	5
No. 99	5	6
No. 100	9	10
No. 101	14	9
No. 102	9	10
No. 103	13	10
No. 104	7	7
No. 105	5	5
No. 106	10	81
No. 107	-1	54
No. 108	11	10
No. 109	6	5
No. 110	8	10
No. 111	25	23
No. 112	10	10
No. 113	14	16
No. 114	1	-1
No. 115	11	10
No. 116	-1	1
No. 117	0	1
No. 118	N/A	N/A
No. 119	-1	-1
No. 120	-1	1
No. 121	0	1
No. 122	1	5
No. 123	-1	1

5 **Table 16 (Cont'd)**  
**Infection Luciferase Activity**

Example No.	1 uM	1 uM + 17 $\beta$ -estradiol
No. 124	-2	-2
No. 125	-3	-2
No. 126	-1	0
No. 127	-3	-4
No. 132	-5	-2
No. 133	7	9
No. 134	9	5
No. 135	7	3
No. 136	16	10
No. 137	6	8
No. 138	-2	-1
No. 139	-12	-13
No. 160	N/A	N/A
No. 161	N/A	N/A
No. 162	-14	-13
No. 166	25	23
No. 167	4	10
No. 168	3	7

10 **Method No. 19**

**Rat Uterotrophic/Antiuterotrophic Bioassay**

15 The estrogenic and antiestrogenic properties of the compounds were determined in an immature rat uterotrophic assay (4 day) that (as described previously by L.J.Black and R.L.Goode, Life Sciences, 26, 1453 (1980)). Immature Sprague-Dawley rats (female, 18 days old) were tested in groups of six. The animals were treated by daily ip injection with 10 uG compound, 100 uG compound, (100 uG compound + 1 uG 17 $\beta$ -estradiol) to check antiestrogenicity, and 1 uG 17 $\beta$ -estradiol, with 50% DMSO/50% saline as the injection vehicle. On day 4 the animals were sacrificed by  
20 CO<sub>2</sub> asphyxiation and their uteri were removed and stripped of excess lipid, any fluid removed and the wet weight determined. A small section of one horn was submitted for histology and the remainder used to isolate total RNA in order to evaluate complement component 3 gene expression.

5

Table 17

## 3 Day Rat Immature Uterine Assay

10

	<u>Uterine wt</u> <u>mg</u>	<u>Uterine wt</u> <u>mg</u>	<u>Uterine wt</u> <u>mg</u>	<u>Uterine wt</u> <u>mg</u>
Example No.	100 uG compd	100 uG compd + 1uG 17 $\beta$ - estradiol	1 uG 17 $\beta$ - estradiol	Vehicle
Tamoxifen	71.4 mg	N/A	98.2 mg	42.7 mg
No. 85	41.1 mg	92.4 mg	94.4 mg	26.6 mg
No. 94	28.1 mg	93.7 mg	88.5 mg	22.3 mg
No. 97	27.4 mg	24.3 mg	63.2 mg	30.7 mg
No. 98	29.4 mg	27.9 mg	94.1 mg	35.9 mg
No. 100	59.9 mg	68.7 mg	91.9 mg	23.4 mg
No. 101	65.1 mg	71.0 mg	113.7 mg	27.7 mg
No. 122	46.7 mg	38.7 mg	103.4 mg	30.3 mg
No. 123	39.2 mg	61.4 mg	94.4 mg	26.1 mg
No. 138	28.4 mg	37.9 mg	93.9 mg	24.6 mg
No. 139	30.4 mg	45.0 mg	82.1 mg	20.5 mg
No. 168	43.2 mg	81.7 mg	98.9 mg	25.5 mg

## Method No. 20

## 6-Week Ovariectomized Rat Model

15

Female Sprague Dawley CD rats, ovx or sham ovx, were obtained 1 day after surgery from Taconic Farm (weight range 240 - 275 g). They were housed 3 or 4 rats/cage in a room on a 14/10 (light/dark) schedule and provided with food (Purina 500 rat chow) and water ad libitum. Treatment for all studies began 1 day after the animals arrival and dosed 5 or 7 days per week as indicated for 6 weeks. A group of age matched sham operated rats not receiving any treatment served as an intact, estrogen replete control group for each study. All treatments were prepared in 1% tween 80 in normal saline at defined concentrations so that the treatment volume was 0.1mL/100g body weight. 17-beta estradiol was dissolved in corn oil (20 uG/mL) and delivered subcutaneously, 0.1 mL/rat. All dosages were adjusted at three week intervals according to group mean body weight measurements.

25

5           Five weeks after the initiation of treatment and one week prior to the termination of the study, each rat was evaluated for bone mineral density (BMD). The BMD's of the proximal tibiae (PT) and fourth lumbar vertebrae (L4) were measured in anesthetized rats using a dual energy X-ray absorptiometer (Eclipse XR-26, Norland Corp. Ft. Atkins, WI). The dual energy X-ray absorptiometer (DXA) measurements  
10 for each rat were performed as follows: Fifteen minutes prior to DXA measurements, the rat was anesthetized with an intraperitoneal injection of 100 mg/kg ketamine (Bristol Laboratories, Syracuse, NY) and 0.75 mg/kg acepromazine (Aveco, Ft.Dodge, IA). The rat was placed on an acrylic table under the DXA scanner perpendicular to its path; the limbs were extended and secured with paper tape to the surface of the table. A  
15 preliminary scan was performed at a scan speed of 50 mm/second with a scan resolution of 1.5 mm X 1.5 mm to determine the region of interest in PT and L4. Small subject software was employed at a scan speed of 10mm/second with resolution of 0.5 mm X 0.5 mm for final BMD measurements. The software allows the operator to define a 1.5 cm wide area to cover the total length of L4. The BMDs for respective  
20 sites were computed by the software as a function of the attenuation of the dual beam (46.8 KeV and 80 KeV) X-ray generated by the source underneath the subject and the detector travelling along the defined area above the subject. The data for BMD values (expressed in g/cm<sup>2</sup>) and individual scans were stored for statistical analysis.

25           One week after BMD evaluation the rats were sacrificed by carbon dioxide suffocation and blood collected for cholesterol determination. The uteri were removed and the weights taken. Total cholesterol is determined using a Boehringer-Mannheim Hitachi 911 clinical analyzer using the Cholesterol/HP kit. Statistics were compared using one-way analysis of variance with Dunnet's test.

- 120 -

5

Table 18

## 6-Week Ovariectomized Rat Study Of Example No. 98

Treatment	BMD (mg/cm <sup>2</sup> ) <sup>a,b</sup>		Body Weight (g) <sup>a,c</sup>	Uterine Weight (mg) <sup>a,c</sup>	Cholesterol (mg/dl) <sup>a,c</sup>
	Proximal Tibia	L <sub>4</sub>			
Study <sup>d</sup>					
Sham (Intact)	0.211** ±0.003	0.183* ±0.003	43.0* ±6.0	426.4** ±25.0	71.6** ±5.0
Vehicle (Ovx)	0.189 ±0.004	0.169 ±0.004	62.7 ±8.2	118.2 ±7.8	87.2 ±3.0
<b>Example No. 98</b>					
0.3mg/kg, p.o.	0.210** ±0.003	0.173 ±0.003	46.8 ±6.6	149.3 ±4.4	59.0** ±2.2
Raloxifene 3mg/kg, p.o.	0.207** ±0.006	0.170 ±0.003	25.3** ±5.4	191.6** ±9.3	55.0** ±2.4
17β-Estradiol 2μg/rat, s.c.	0.224** ±0.004	0.169 ±0.004	33.1** ±4.9	426.0** ±18.4	95.5 ±3.9

10

<sup>a</sup> Mean ± SEM<sup>b</sup> Following 5 weeks of treatment<sup>c</sup> Following 6 weeks of treatment<sup>d</sup> Daily treatment x7 days/week x6 weeks

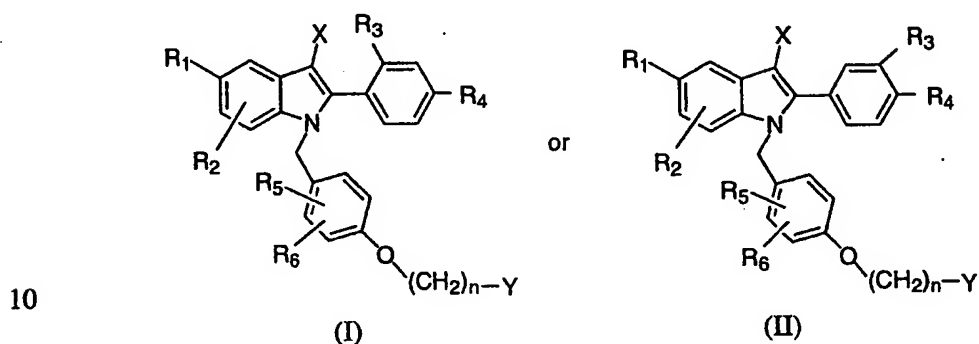
\*p &lt; 0.05 vs corresponding Vehicle value

\*\*p &lt; 0.01 vs corresponding Vehicle value

15

5 **CLAIMS:**

1. A pharmaceutical composition comprising one or more estrogens and a compound having the structure:



wherein:

15  $R_1$  is selected from H, OH or the  $C_1$ - $C_{12}$  esters (straight chain or branched) or  $C_1$ - $C_{12}$  (straight chain or branched or cyclic) alkyl ethers thereof, or halogens; or  $C_1$ - $C_4$  halogenated ethers including trifluoromethyl ether and trichloromethyl ether.

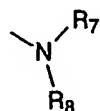
20  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and  $R_6$  are independently selected from H, OH or the  $C_1$ - $C_{12}$  esters (straight chain or branched) or  $C_1$ - $C_{12}$  alkyl ethers (straight chain or branched or cyclic) thereof, halogens, or  $C_1$ - $C_4$  halogenated ethers including trifluoromethyl ether and trichloromethyl ether, cyano,  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl (straight chain or branched), or trifluoromethyl, with the proviso that, when  $R_1$  is H,  $R_2$  is not OH.

$X$  is selected from H,  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, cyano, nitro, trifluoromethyl, halogen;

$n$  is 2 or 3;

$Y$  is selected from:

25 a) the moiety:



30 wherein  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are independently selected from H,  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, or phenyl optionally substituted by CN,  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl (straight chain or branched),  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkoxy (straight chain or branched), halogen, -OH, - $CF_3$  or - $OCF_3$ ; or  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are concatenated together as  $-(CH_2)_p-$ , wherein  $p$  is an integer of from 2 to 6, preferably 4

- 122 -

5 to 6, the ring so formed is optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, trifluoromethyl, halogen, hydrogen, phenyl, nitro and -CN

b) a five-, six- or seven- membered saturated, unsaturated or partially unsaturated heterocycle containing up to two heteroatoms selected from -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, -N= and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, wherein R<sub>1</sub> is as defined above or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl ;

c) a bicyclic heterocycle containing from 6-12 carbon atoms either bridged or fused and containing up to two heteroatoms selected from -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN-, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>) alkyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

30

2. A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen;

R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen, cyano, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or trifluoromethyl, with the

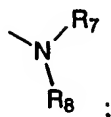
35 proviso that, when R<sub>1</sub> is H, R<sub>2</sub> is not OH;

X is selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, cyano, nitro, trifluoromethyl, halogen;

Y is the moiety



- 123 -



5  $\text{R}_7$  and  $\text{R}_8$  are selected independently from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or combined by - (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-, wherein p is an integer of from 2 to 6, so as to form a ring, the ring being optionally substituted by up to three substituents selected from hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NHCO(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl and -NO<sub>2</sub>;

10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

15

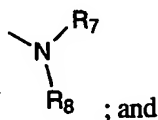
3. A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 wherein:

$\text{R}_1$  is OH;

20  $\text{R}_2$ ,  $\text{R}_3$ ,  $\text{R}_4$ ,  $\text{R}_5$ , and  $\text{R}_6$  are independently selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen, cyano, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or trifluoromethyl, with the proviso that, when  $\text{R}_1$  is H,  $\text{R}_2$  is not OH;

X is selected from the group of Cl, NO<sub>2</sub>, CN, CF<sub>3</sub>, or CH<sub>3</sub>;

Y is the moiety



25

$\text{R}_7$  and  $\text{R}_8$  are concatenated together as -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-, wherein r is an integer of from 4 to 6, to form a ring optionally substituted by up to three substituents selected from hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NHCO(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl and -NO<sub>2</sub>;

30 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

- 124 -

- 5           4.     A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 5-benzyloxy-2-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indole or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 10           5.     A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 15           6.     A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 4-{3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indole} or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 20           7.     A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 4-{5-fluoro-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-2-yl}-phenol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
8.     A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 25           9.     A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-dimethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 30           10.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-diethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 35           11.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-cyclopentyloxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

- 125 -

5           12.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-2-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10           13.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-piperidin-1-ylethoxy)benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15           14.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20           15.    A pharmaceutical composition of any one of Claims 1 to 14 wherein the one or more estrogens are selected from equilin, equilenin, estradiene, ethinyl estradiol, 17 $\beta$ -estradiol, 17 $\alpha$ -dihydroequilenin, 17 $\beta$ -dihydroequilenin, menstranol, conjugated estrogens, estrone, 17 $\alpha$ -estradiol sulfate, Delta8,9- dehydroestrone, equol or enterolactone; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

25           16.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 15 wherein the pharmaceutically acceptable salt of the one or more estrogens is a sodium salt.

30           17.    A method of treating or preventing bone loss in a mammal, the method comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of an estrogen and an effective amount of a compound of any one of Claims 1 to 14, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

35           18.    A method of treating or preventing disease states or syndromes which are caused or associated with an estrogen deficiency in a mammal, the method comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of an estrogen and an effective amount of a compound of any one of Claims 1 to 14, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

          19.    A method of treating or preventing cardiovascular disease in a mammal, the method comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount

- 126 -

5 of an estrogen and an effective amount of a compound of any one of Claims 1 to 14, or  
a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20. A method of treating or preventing disease in a mammal which result  
from proliferation or abnormal development, actions or growth of endometrial or  
10 endometrial-like tissue, the method comprising administering to a mammal in need  
thereof an effective amount of an estrogen and an effective amount of a compound of  
any one of Claims 1 to 14, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

21. A method of treatment of Claim 20 wherein the disease is  
15 endometriosis.

22. A product comprising one or more estrogens and a compound having  
the structure (I) or (II) as claimed in any one 1 to 14 as a combined preparation for  
simultaneous, separate or sequential use in the treatment or prevention of  
20 cardiovascular disease, or a disease in a mammal which results from proliferation or  
abnormal development, actions or growth of endometrial or endometrial-like tissue, or  
disease states or syndromes which are caused or associated with an estrogen deficiency

25

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 99/10217

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER  
IPC 6 A61K31/40 A61K31/565

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
IPC 6 A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
E	WO 99 24027 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 20 May 1999 (1999-05-20) abstract	1-22
X	EP 0 802 183 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 22 October 1997 (1997-10-22) abstract; examples 61,85,97,98,100,101,122,167,168	1-22
P,Y	WO 99 19293 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 22 April 1999 (1999-04-22) abstract; examples 10-15	1-22
Y	EP 0 639 567 A (OTSUKA PHARMA CO LTD) 22 February 1995 (1995-02-22) tables 11,13,15,19	1-3, 15-22
	--- -/--	

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

### \* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

14 September 1999

Date of mailing of the international search report

28/09/1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA  
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Gonzalez Ramon, N

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 99/10217

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	EP 0 802 184 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 22 October 1997 (1997-10-22) abstract ---	1-22
Y	DE 44 26 625 A (SCHERING AG) 14 March 1996 (1996-03-14) abstract ---	1-3, 15-22
A	WO 95 17383 A (KARO BIO AB ; NORINDER ULF (SE)) 29 June 1995 (1995-06-29) abstract; claim 1 ---	1-22
Y	KOMM, B. S. ET AL: "The ongoing saga of osteoporosis treatment" J. CELL BIOCHEM. SUPP., vol. 30/31, 1998, pages 277-283, XP002115101 page 279, column 2, paragraph 3 -page 280, column 1 ---	1-22
P,X	WO 99 21557 A (WYVRATT MATTHEW J ; CHU LIN (US); GOULET MARK T (US); MERCK & CO IN) 6 May 1999 (1999-05-06) claims 1, 19 ---	1-3, 15-22
A	WO 98 01443 A (NADLER GUY MARGUERITE MARIE GE ; SMITHKLINE BEECHAM LAB (FR); FARIN) 15 January 1998 (1998-01-15) abstract ---	1-22
A	VON ANGERER, ERWIN ET AL: "2-Phenylindoles. Effect of N-benzoylation on estrogen receptor affinity, estrogenic properties, and mammary tumor inhibiting activity" J. MED. CHEM. (1987), 30(1), 131-6 , XP002115258 -----	1-22

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US 99/10217

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of Item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Remark: Although claims 17-21  
are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal  
body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged  
effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such  
an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of Item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all  
searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment  
of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report  
covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is  
restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 99/10217

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9924027 A	20-05-1999	AU 1303199 A	31-05-1999
EP 0802183 A	22-10-1997	AU 1892097 A	23-10-1997
		BR 9701895 A	10-11-1998
		CA 2203079 A	19-10-1997
		CN 1170719 A	21-01-1998
		CZ 9701175 A	12-11-1997
		HU 9700777 A	28-06-1999
		JP 10036346 A	10-02-1998
		NO 971815 A	20-10-1997
		SK 47297 A	05-11-1997
		ZA 9703302 A	19-10-1998
		CA 2203078 A	04-10-1998
WO 9919293 A	22-04-1999	AU 1083199 A	03-05-1999
EP 0639567 A	22-02-1995	AU 665690 B	11-01-1996
		US 5496844 A	05-03-1996
		AU 4271193 A	13-12-1993
		CA 2135160 A	25-11-1993
		WO 9323374 A	25-11-1993
EP 0802184 A	22-10-1997	AU 1892197 A	23-10-1997
		BR 9701879 A	29-09-1998
		CA 2203074 A	19-10-1997
		CN 1168373 A	24-12-1997
		CZ 9701176 A	17-12-1997
		JP 10036347 A	10-02-1998
		NO 971814 A	20-10-1997
		SK 47197 A	05-11-1997
		ZA 9703299 A	19-10-1998
		CA 2203073 A	19-10-1997
DE 4426625 A	14-03-1996	AU 3254595 A	22-02-1996
		CA 2196065 A	08-02-1996
		WO 9603375 A	08-02-1996
		EP 0772591 A	14-05-1997
WO 9517383 A	29-06-1995	AU 1316995 A	10-07-1995
		CA 2187296 A	29-06-1995
		EP 0736008 A	09-10-1996
		JP 9510689 T	28-10-1997
WO 9921557 A	06-05-1999	AU 1197299 A	17-05-1999
WO 9801443 A	15-01-1998	AU 3620597 A	02-02-1998
		EP 0914321 A	12-05-1999
		NO 990080 A	08-01-1999
		PL 330994 A	21-06-1999